

TIGHTENING CURVES AND GRAPHS ON SURFACES

BY

HSIEN-CHIH CHANG

DISSERTATION

Submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements
for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in Computer Science
in the Graduate College of the
University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign, 2018

Urbana, Illinois

Doctoral Committee:

Professor Jeff Erickson, Chair
Professor Chandra Chekuri
Professor Nathan M. Dunfield
Professor David Eppstein
Associate Professor Alexandra Kolla



獻給 親愛的爸爸媽媽
謝謝你們的愛

Abstract

6 Any continuous deformation of closed curves on a surface can be decomposed into a finite sequence of local changes
7 on the structure of the curves; we refer to such local operations as *homotopy moves*. *Tightening* is the process of
8 deforming given curves into their minimum position; that is, those with minimum number of self-intersections.
9 While such operations and the tightening process has been studied extensively, surprisingly little is known about
10 the *quantitative* bounds on the number of homotopy moves required to tighten an arbitrary curve.

11 An unexpected connection exists between homotopy moves and a set of local operations on graphs called
12 *electrical transformations*. Electrical transformations have been used to simplify electrical networks since the 19th
13 century; later they have been used for solving various combinatorial problems on graphs, as well as applications in
14 statistical mechanics, robotics, and quantum mechanics. Steinitz, in his study of 3-dimensional polytopes, looked
15 at the electrical transformations through the lens of medial construction, and implicitly established the connection
16 to homotopy moves; later the same observation has been discovered independently in the context of knots.

17 In this thesis, we study the process of tightening curves on surfaces using homotopy moves and their con-
18 sequences on electrical transformations from a quantitative perspective. To derive upper and lower bounds we
19 utilize tools like curve invariants, surface theory, combinatorial topology, and hyperbolic geometry. We develop
20 several new tools to construct efficient algorithms on tightening curves and graphs, as well as to present examples
21 where no efficient algorithm exists. We then argue that in order to study electrical transformations, intuitively it is
22 most beneficial to work with *monotonic* homotopy moves instead, where no new crossings are created throughout
23 the process; ideas and proof techniques that work for monotonic homotopy moves should transfer to those for
24 electrical transformations. We present conjectures and partial evidence supporting the argument.

Acknowledgments

25 First I would like to express my most sincere gratitude towards my Ph.D. advisor, Jeff Erickson, for your guidance
26 throughout the years. It is an honor to be your student. You always give me the most honest advice; every meeting
27 with you is fun and fruitful. Most of all, your patience and listening ears lighten the burden when life was difficult
28 and research was slow. I am forever grateful to know you as a colleague, and a friend.

29 It is always joyful to talk to Sariel Har-Peled, either about research or just random fun. Thank you for
30 introducing me around on my first day in school, and all the ideas and advice (and jokes!) you shared with me. I
31 want to thank Alexandra Kolla for your constant support and trust. Thank you for always giving me opportunities
32 to travel and collaborate, even when no progress has been made for a long time.

33 The theory group in University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign provides the most healthy research environment
34 for me to grow as a young researcher. The collaborative atmosphere allows us to explore freely among the topics
35 that interest us. I am fortunate to have so many great colleagues to work and share experience with, and sometimes
36 just having fun together in the last few wonderful years: Shashank Agrawal, Matthew Bauer, Shant Boodaghians,
37 Charles Carlson, Timothy Chan, Karthik Chandrasekaran, Chandra Chekuri, Kyle Fox, Shamoli Gupta, Mitchell
38 Jones, Konstantinos Koiliaris, Nirman Kumar, Patrick Lin, Vivek Madan, Sahand Mozaffari, Kent Quanrud, Benjamin
39 Raichel, Tasos Sidiropoulos, Matus Telgarsky, Ross Vasko, Yipu Wang, Chao Xu, Ching-Hua Yu, Xilin Yu, and many
40 more that I didn't have the chance to know better.

41 I am very fortunate to have the chance of working with great people all around the world: Paweł Gawrychowski,
42 Naonori Kakimura, David Letscher, Arnaud de Mesmay, Shay Mozes, Saul Schleimer, Eric Sedgwick, Dylan Thurston,
43 Stephan Tillmann, and Oren Weimann. Working together with similar minds on interesting projects is much more
44 fun than working alone. Also, I want to express my thanks to Erin Chambers, Ho-Lin Chen, Kai-Min Chung, Joshua
45 Grochow, Chung-Shou Liao, Michael Pelsmajer, and Marcus Schaefer for providing me opportunities to travel and
46 discuss research with you.

47 Without the days working with friends in the theory group of National Taiwan University, I might not even
48 pursue the career of being a theoretical computer scientist. Thanks to Hsueh-I Lu for your inspiring lectures,
49 guidance, and advice on research that lead me to where I am.

50 最後，特別感謝妻子祈祈與昕恆；你們是我生命中的喜樂。與妳攜手同行使我知道，愛是最大的奧秘。
51 Finally, special thanks to Chichi and Luke; you are the joy of my life. Being with you made me realize that love is
52 the greatest mystery.

Table of Contents

54	Chapter 1 Introduction and History	1
55	1.1 Homotopy Moves	1
56	1.2 Electrical Transformations	3
57	1.3 Relation between Two Local Operations	4
58	1.4 Results and Outline of the Thesis	5
59	1.5 History and Related Work	5
60	1.6 Acknowledgment	7
61	Chapter 2 Preliminaries	9
62	2.1 Surfaces	9
63	2.2 Curves and Graphs on Surfaces	9
64	2.2.1 Curves	9
65	2.2.2 Graphs and Their Embeddings	10
66	2.2.3 Curves as 4-regular Maps	10
67	2.2.4 Jordan Curve Theorem	11
68	2.2.5 Multicurves	11
69	2.2.6 Tangles	11
70	2.3 Homotopy	12
71	2.3.1 Covering Spaces and Fundamental Groups	12
72	2.3.2 Lifting	12
73	2.4 Combinatorial Properties of Curves	13
74	2.4.1 Monogons and Bigons	13
75	2.4.2 Homotopy Moves	13
76	2.4.3 Signs and Winding Numbers	13
77	2.5 Relating Graphs to Curves	14
78	2.5.1 Medial Construction	14
79	2.5.2 Facial Electrical Moves	14
80	2.5.3 Depths of Planar and Annular Multicurves	15
81	2.5.4 Smoothing	15
82	2.6 Tightening Curves via Bigon Removal	16
83	Chapter 3 Curve Invariant — Defect	17
84	3.1 Defect Lower Bound	18
85	3.1.1 Flat Torus Knots	18
86	3.1.2 Defects of arbitrary flat torus knots	20
87	3.2 Defect Upper Bound	23
88	3.2.1 Winding Numbers and Diameter	23
89	3.2.2 Inclusion-Exclusion	24
90	3.2.3 Divide and Conquer	27
91	3.3 Medial Defect is Independent of Planar Embeddings	29
92	3.3.1 Navigating Between Planar Embeddings	29
93	3.3.2 Tangle Flips	30
94	3.4 Implications for Random Knots	31

95	Chapter 4 Lower Bounds for Tightening Curves	33
96	4.1 Lower Bounds for Planar Curves	33
97	4.1.1 Multicurves	34
98	4.2 Quadratic Bound for Curves on Surfaces	36
99	4.3 Quadratic Bound for Contractible Curves on Surfaces	38
100	4.3.1 Traces and Types	38
101	4.3.2 A Bad Contractible Annular Curve	39
102	4.3.3 More Complicated Surfaces	40
103	Chapter 5 Tightening Planar Curves	43
104	5.1 Planar Curves	43
105	5.1.1 Contracting Simple Loops	43
106	5.1.2 Tangles	44
107	5.1.3 Main Algorithm	46
108	5.1.4 Efficient Implementation	46
109	5.2 Planar Multicurves	47
110	Chapter 6 Tightening Curves on Surfaces	51
111	6.1 Singular Bigons and Singular Monogons	51
112	6.2 Surfaces with Boundary	52
113	6.2.1 Removing a Basic Singular Bigon	53
114	6.3 Surfaces Without Boundary	56
115	6.3.1 Dual Reduced Cut Graphs	56
116	6.3.2 Isoperimetric Inequality	57
117	6.3.3 Coarse Homotopy	58
118	6.3.4 Fine Homotopy	60
119	6.4 Tightening Curves Using Monotonic Homotopy Moves	63
120	6.4.1 Moving Curves Close to Geodesics	64
121	Chapter 7 Electrical Transformations	69
122	7.1 Types of Electrical Transformations	69
123	7.2 Connection Between Electrical and Homotopy Moves	70
124	7.2.1 Smoothing Lemma—Inductive case	71
125	7.2.2 In the Plane	73
126	7.2.3 In the Annulus	74
127	7.2.4 Towards Connection between Electrical and Monotonic Homotopy Moves	76
128	7.3 Lower Bounds on Electrical Transformations	79
129	7.3.1 Plane Graphs	79
130	7.3.2 Two-Terminal Plane Graphs	80
131	7.3.3 Planar Electrical Transformations	82
132	7.3.4 Terminal-Leaf Contractions	83
133	Chapter 8 Conclusions and Open Problems	85
134	8.1 Feo-Provan Conjecture	85
135	8.1.1 Feo-Provan’s Algorithm	86
136	8.1.2 Steinitz’s Algorithm	86
137	8.1.3 Curves where All Bigons are Large	88
138	8.2 Homotopy Moves on Low-genus Surfaces	89
139	8.2.1 Tangles	89
140	8.2.2 Projective Plane	90
141	8.3 Monotonic Homotopy Moves on Arbitrary Surfaces	90
142	References	91

Chapter 1

Introduction and History

143 Say you're me and you're in math class, and your teacher's talking about ... Well,
who knows what your teacher's talking about. Probably a good time to start doodling.

— Vi Hart, *Doodling in Math Class*

144 一角兩角三角形，四角五角六角半。

One-gon, two-gon, tri-angle; four-gon, five-gon, six-gon half.

— Mandarin fingerplay

145 Given an arbitrary closed curve on some 2-dimensional surface, it is natural to look for ways to modify or deform
146 the curve continuously into its “simplest” form. The meaning of “simple” varies according to the applications. To
147 fix the terminology, our goal is to *tighten* the curve via continuous deformation (known as *homotopy*) into another
148 closed curve with minimum complexity. Common complexity measures include the *time* to minimize the length
149 of the curve [23, 29, 30, 54, 63, 65, 82, 140, 162]; the *area* of the homotopy [39, 98, 183, 255]; the *height* of the
150 homotopy [28, 35, 36, 38, 133]; the *width* of the homotopy [32, 34]; and other properties desired for the process,
151 like simplicity and monotonicity [37, 40, 41, 42]. Most of the measures studied inherently require some existing
152 *geometry* associated with the surface and the curve. However, in some instances of the curve tightening problem,
153 the input curve is only supplied by—or differentiated up to—its combinatorial structure, and therefore a better
154 complexity measure, preferably based only on the changes to the structure, is desired.

155 Consider the following scenario: Given two curves in the plane, we want to decide which curve is more
156 complicated than the other. Various methods are known to measure the “curviness” of the drawings, which can be
157 served as a way to decide the complexity of the curves. However, there are cases when “curviness” might not be
158 the most suited measure. For example, when the input curves are hand-drawn symbols, the length and shape of
159 the curves varies drastically from one drawer to the other. What is invariant is the combinatorial structure of the
160 hand drawing, that is, what “symbols” they really are. Naïve measure like counting the number of crossings in the
161 symbols helps, but it does not solve the problem as the number of planar curves with a fixed number of crossings
162 grows exponentially.

163 In this thesis we propose and study the following *topological* complexity measure—the number of local
164 operations called *homotopy moves* that change the combinatorial structure—for tightening closed curves on
165 arbitrary surfaces. Such local operations have been studied in topology since almost a hundred years ago
166 [6, 7, 104, 105, 202, 239]; however, to the best of our knowledge, no previous work has tackled the problem from a
167 quantitative perspective.

1.1 Homotopy Moves

169 *Homotopy* is the process of continuously deforming one curve to the other. For the sake of discretizing the process,
170 we assume throughout the rest of the thesis that all the curves are *generic*—every self-intersection is formed by

exactly two subpaths crossing each other properly without tangency (that is, a *transverse double* intersection). In this case, one can summarize the changes to the combinatorial structure of the curve on a surface during the homotopy using the following set of local operations:

- $1 \leftrightarrow 0$: Remove/add an empty *monogon*.
- $2 \leftrightarrow 0$: Remove/add an empty *bigon*.
- $3 \rightarrow 3$: Flip an empty *triangle*; equivalently, move one strand across a self-intersection point.

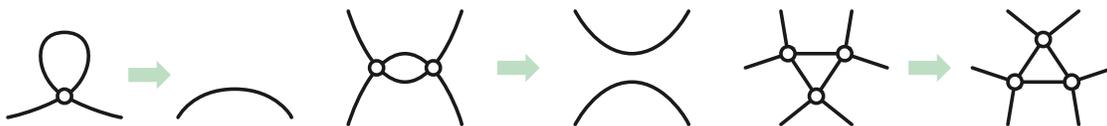


Figure 1.1. Homotopy moves $1 \rightarrow 0$, $2 \rightarrow 0$, and $3 \rightarrow 3$.

Each homotopy move is performed by continuously deforming the curve inside an open disk embedded on the surface, meeting γ as shown in Figure 1.1. Consequently, we call these operations *homotopy moves*. Our notation is mnemonic; the numbers before and after each arrow indicate the number of local vertices before and after the move. (Similar notation has been used by Thurston [236].)

Homotopy moves are “shadows” of the classical Reidemeister moves used to manipulate knot and link diagrams [7, 202]. A compactness argument, first explicitly given by Titus [239] and Francis [104, 105] but implicit in earlier work of Alexander [6], Alexander and Briggs [7], and Reidemeister [202], implies that any continuous deformation between two generic closed curves on any surface is equivalent to—and therefore, any generic curve can be tightened by—a finite sequence of homotopy moves.

It is natural to ask *how many* homotopy moves are required to tighten a given closed curve on a surface to another curve with minimum number of self-intersections (known as the *geometric intersection number*). An algorithm to tighten any planar closed curve using at most $O(n^2)$ homotopy moves is implicit in Steinitz’s proof that every 3-connected planar graph is the 1-skeleton of a convex polyhedron [230, 231]. (See Section 2.6 for a more detailed discussion on Steinitz’s algorithm.) The $O(n^2)$ upper bound also follows from algorithms for *regular* homotopy, which forbids $0 \leftrightarrow 1$ moves, by Francis [103], Vegter [251] (for polygonal curves), and Nowik [185].

On higher-genus orientable surfaces, a result of Hass and Scott [135] implies that every non-simple closed curve that is homotopic to a simple closed curve can be tightened using $O(n^2)$ moves, essentially by applying Steinitz’s algorithm. Similar result for arbitrary curves on the torus can be derived and extracted from Hass and Scott [135]. De Graaf and Schrijver [125] proved that arbitrary curves on the annulus can be tightened using at most $O(n^2)$ moves.

When both the surface and the curve are unrestricted, Hass and Scott [136] and de Graaf and Schrijver [125] independently proved that any closed curve on any surface can be tightened using a *finite* number of homotopy moves that never increase the number of self-intersections. Both results use discrete variants of curve-shortening flow. Grayson [126] and Angenent [9] provide similar results using differential curvature flow when the curves and surfaces are well-behaved. Later on Paterson proved the same result using a combinatorial algorithm [187]. None of these algorithms provide any bound on the number of homotopy moves performed as a function of the number of self-intersections. The monotonicity result, together with asymptotic bounds by Bender and Canfield [21] on the number of distinct (rooted) 4-regular maps with n vertices and genus g , immediately implies an upper bound of the form $n^{O(g)} 2^{O(n)}$ on the number of homotopy moves required; this is the best upper bound previously known before our work.

1.2 Electrical Transformations

Let's change our focus from curves to graphs for a moment. Consider the following set of local operations defined on *plane graphs* (that is, planar graphs with embeddings on some surface), called *electrical transformations* (following Colin de Verdière *et al.* [68]), consisting of six operations in three dual pairs, as shown in Figure 1.2.

- *degree-1 reduction*: Contract the edge incident to a vertex of degree 1, or delete the edge incident to a face of degree 1
- *series-parallel reduction*: Contract either edge incident to a vertex of degree 2, or delete either edge incident to a face of degree 2
- ΔY *transformation*: Delete a vertex of degree 3 and connect its neighbors with three new edges, or delete the edges bounding a face of degree 3 and join the vertices of that face to a new vertex.

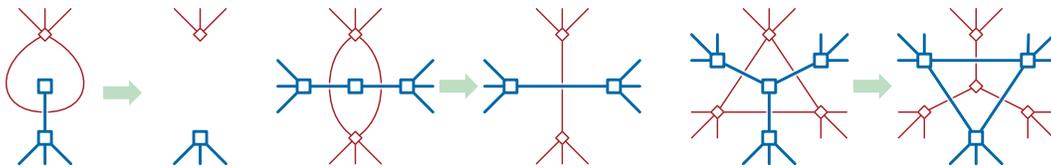


Figure 1.2. Facial electrical transformations in a plane graph G and its dual graph G^* .

It is natural to ask *how many* electrical transformations are required in the worst case. The earliest algorithm for reducing a plane graph to a single vertex again follows from Steinitz's proof of the convex polyhedron theorem [230, 231]. Later algorithms were given by Feo [99], Truemper [242], Feo and Provan [100], and others. Both Steinitz's algorithm and Feo and Provan's algorithm require at most $O(n^2)$ electrical transformations. (We will soon discuss Steinitz's algorithm in Section 2.6, and then Feo and Provan's algorithm later in Section 8.1.1.)

Even the special case of regular grids is interesting. Truemper [242, 244] describes a reduction from the problem of reducing general plane graphs to regular grids using graph minors, and show how to reduce the $p \times p$ grid in $O(p^3)$ steps. Poger and Sussmann [190] showed how to reduce the $(p + q) \times q$ grid in $O(pq^2 + q^3)$ steps. Nakahara and Takahashi [181] prove an upper bound of $O(\min\{pq^2, p^2q\})$ for the $p \times q$ cylindrical grid. Because every n -vertex plane graph is a minor of an $O(n) \times O(n)$ grid [233, 249], all of these results imply an $O(n^3)$ upper bound for arbitrary plane graphs (see Corollary 7.3). Both Gitler [115] and Feo and Provan [100] suspect the possibility that Truemper's algorithm actually performs only $O(n^2)$ electrical transformations. On the other hand, the smallest (cylindrical) grid containing every n -vertex plane graph as a minor has size $\Omega(n) \times \Omega(n)$ [249].

Most of these earlier algorithms actually solve a more difficult problem, considered by Akers [5] and Lehman [165], of reducing a planar graph with two special vertices called *terminals* to a single edge between the two. Epifanov [85] first proved that such reduction is always possible, using a nonconstructive argument; simpler constructive proofs were later given by Feo [99], Truemper [242, 244], Feo and Provan [100] (and Nakahara and Takahashi [181], whose algorithm is almost identical to Truemper's but performed on cylindrical grids instead). In fact, all existing algorithms that work for arbitrary plane graphs without terminals can be modified to work for the two-terminal case.

Feo-Provan Conjecture. Despite decades of prior work as we shown above, the complexity of the electrical reduction process is still poorly understood. Several authors have conjectured that the quadratic bound derived from Feo and Provan [100] can be improved. Without any restrictions on which transformations are permitted,

240 the only known lower bound is the trivial $\Omega(n)$. Gitler [115] and Archdeacon *et al.* [12] asked whether the $O(n^{3/2})$
 241 upper bound for square grids can be improved to near-linear. (We will show in Section 7.3.1 that turns out no
 242 improvements can be made.) As for arbitrary planar graphs, Feo and Provan [100] suggested that “there are
 243 compelling reasons to think that $O(|V|^{3/2})$ is the smallest possible order”, possibly referring to earlier empirical
 244 results of Feo [99, Chapter 6]. Gitler [115] conjectured that a simple modification of Feo and Provan’s algorithm
 245 requires only $O(n^{3/2})$ time.

246 1.3 Relation between Two Local Operations

247 Perhaps the most important and surprising connection we proposed in the thesis, is the existence of a quantitative
 248 relation between the electrical transformations and the homotopy moves. At the surface¹ such connection doesn’t
 249 seem to make sense; after all, electrical transformations are performed on (embedded) graphs, whereas homotopy
 250 moves are performed on curves. We argue that, at an intuitive level, reduction using electrical transformations
 251 should be thought of as a variant of the *monotonic* homotopy process, where all $0 \rightarrow 2$ moves are forbidden.

252 Connections between graphs and planar curves can be traced back to Tait [234], when he came up the notion
 253 later known as the “Tait graph”: Given a planar curve and the unique two-coloring of its regions in the plane,
 254 a graph can be constructed by taking one of the color classes as vertices, and two vertices are adjacent if the
 255 corresponding two regions share an intersection point of the curve. Notice that a Tait graph always comes with
 256 a planar embedding. The inverse operation to the Tait graph construction, now known as the *medial graph*
 257 construction, was discovered by Steinitz in his study of 3-dimensional convex polyhedron [230, 231], which he
 258 referred to as the “ Θ -Prozeß”. The medial graph G^\times of an embedded graph G is constructed by taking the edges
 259 of G as vertices and connect two edges of G (with multiplicity) if they share both a vertex and a face in G . Every
 260 vertex in the medial graph has degree 4, and therefore one can naturally view the medial graph as a system of
 261 curves lying on the same surface as G , where each intersection point between two (possibly identical) constituent
 262 curves is transverse. We refer to the set of curves as the *medial curves*.

263 Through the lens of the medial construction, electrical transformations in any embedded graph G correspond to
 264 local operations in the medial graph G^\times that bare extreme resemblance—perhaps almost identical to—homotopy
 265 moves. We refer to such local operations as *medial electrical moves*.

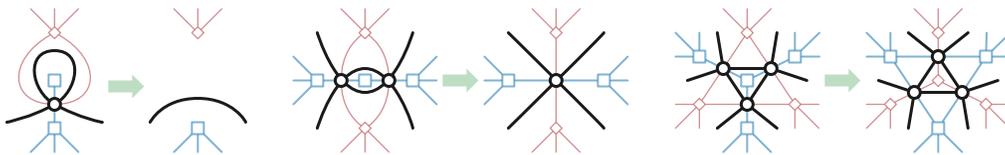


Figure 1.3. Electrical transformations and the corresponding medial electrical moves.

266 Now a natural bijection is established between graphs and systems of generic curves on a fixed surface;
 267 electrical transformations performed on the graph correspond to medial electrical moves performed on the medial
 268 curves. Many authors have observed and studied such correspondence, implicitly by Steinitz [230, 231] and
 269 Grünbaum [128], and explicitly by Yajima and Kinoshita [258], Goldman and Kauffman [117], and Nobel and
 270 Welsh [184].

271 The correspondence also provides another motivation to study electrical and homotopy moves on surfaces:
 272 When we perform electrical transformations on plane graphs, the terminals should not be involved in any local

¹No pun intended.

operations. Under the medial graph construction, these terminals turn into punctures in the plane; no electrical moves will ever move the curves across a puncture. Therefore, by studying the relationship between electrical and homotopy moves on the punctured plane, we can bound the number of electrical transformations required to reduce plane graphs with terminals.

1.4 Results and Outline of the Thesis

The majority of the thesis is devoted to proving worst-case upper and lower bounds on the number of homotopy moves used for tightening curves and the number of electrical transformations required to reduce planar graphs.

We start with the preliminaries in Chapter 2, introducing the basic concepts used throughout the thesis and fixing the terminologies. Then in Chapter 3 we study the numerical curve invariant called *defect* introduced by Arnold [15, 16] and Aicardi [4]. Exact formulas of defect on specific families of curves are computed, along with several new properties of defect. The chapter finishes with some implications on *random knots*.

In Chapter 4 we derive lower bounds on the number of homotopy moves required to tighten curves on surfaces. We provide an $\Omega(n^{3/2})$ lower bound on tightening closed curves in the plane through the defect invariant. A natural generalization of defect to higher-genus surface gives a stronger $\Omega(n^2)$ bound for non-contractible curves on arbitrary orientable surfaces. The same $\Omega(n^2)$ bound can be proven and extended to arbitrary curves on any surface with non-positive Euler characteristic using a completely different potential function. In Chapter 5, a matching $O(n^{3/2})$ upper bound for planar curves is obtained using the *useful cycle technique*; we then extend the algorithm to arbitrary collection of closed curves in the plane.

In Chapter 6 we describe two methods to tighten curves on an arbitrary orientable surface by adapting Steinitz's algorithm: First, we present an $O((g + b)n^3)$ -step algorithm for tightening curves on an arbitrary orientable genus- g surface with $b > 0$ boundary components. Next, we present an $O(gn^3 \log^2 n)$ -step algorithm for tightening curves on an arbitrary orientable genus- g surface without boundary. We conclude the chapter with a discussion on monotonicity of the homotopy process.

In Chapter 7 we study the quantitative relation between electrical transformations and monotonic homotopy moves. After a brief discussion on some subtlety in the definition of electrical transformations, we will formally discuss the comparison between the two sets of operations, supported by some natural conjectures strengthening the relationship between electrical moves and homotopy moves. Evidence towards the conjectures and proofs for the special cases are provided in subsequent subsections; in passing, we will make Truemper's minor lemma [242] quantitative. We then apply the theory developed in previous chapters and sections to derive lower bounds on the number of electrical transformations required to reduce planar graphs, with or without terminals. One of the major theorem we rely on, based on arguments of Truemper [242] and Noble and Welsh [184], is that reducing a *unicursal* plane graph G —one whose medial graph is the image of a single closed curve—using electrical transformations requires at least as many steps as reducing the medial graph of G to a simple closed curve using homotopy moves.

1.5 History and Related Work

Applications of electrical transformations. Electrical transformations have been used since the end of the 19th century [155, 212] to analyze resistor networks and other electrical circuits, but many other applications have been discovered since. Akers [5] used the same transformations to compute shortest paths and maximum

311 flows (see also Hobbs [141]). Lehman [165] used them to estimate network reliability; significant amount of
312 work on such application follows [49, 131, 225, 240, 245] (see also [107, 129, 209, 210, 213, 224]). Further
313 applications on solving combinatorial problems using electrical transformations have been found, including
314 multicommodity flows [99]; counting spanning trees, perfect matchings, and cuts [33, 62]; evaluation of spin
315 models in statistical mechanics [62, 146]; solving generalized Laplacian linear systems [127, 181]; kinematic
316 analysis of robot manipulators [227]; flow estimation from noisy measurements [263]; constructing distance
317 preservers [121]; and studying singularities in quantum field theory [200]. Lehman [164] gave a necessary
318 condition on problems to which the electrical transformations applies. (See Chapter 7 and Appendix B of Gitler's
319 thesis [115] for some discussion.)

320 **Local operations related to homotopy moves.** Tight bounds are known for two special cases where some
321 homotopy moves are forbidden. First, Nowik [185] proved a tight $\Omega(n^2)$ lower bound for regular homotopy.
322 Second, Khovanov [157] defined two curves to be *doodle equivalent* if one can be transformed into the other using
323 $1 \leftrightarrow 0$ and $2 \leftrightarrow 0$ moves. Khovanov [157] and Ito and Takimura [144] independently proved that any planar curve
324 can be transformed into its unique equivalent doodle with the smallest number of vertices, using only $1 \rightarrow 0$ and
325 $2 \rightarrow 0$ moves. Thus, two doodle equivalent curves are connected by a sequence of $O(n)$ moves, which is obviously
326 tight. It is not known which sets of curves are equivalent under $1 \leftrightarrow 0$ and $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves; indeed, Hagge and Yazinski
327 only recently proved that this equivalence is nontrivial [132]; see also related results of Ito *et al.* [144, 145].
328 Looser bounds are also known for the minimum number of Reidemeister moves needed to reduce a diagram of
329 the unknot [134, 159], to separate the components of a split link [138], or to move between two equivalent knot
330 diagrams [70, 137].

331 **Geometric intersection number.** The *geometric intersection number* of a closed curve γ on a surface is the number
332 of self-intersections of a tightening of γ . Several methods for characterizing and computing geometric intersection
333 numbers are known [52, 53, 61, 119, 172]; however, none of these earlier results offers a full complexity analysis.
334 Arettines [13] described a polynomial-time algorithm to compute geometric intersection number of a curve on an
335 orientable surface with boundary, starting from the reduced crossing sequence of the curve with a system of arcs
336 (defined in Section 6.2.1). Despré and Lazarus [77] described the first fully-analyzed polynomial-time algorithm
337 to compute the geometric intersection number of arbitrary closed curves on an arbitrary orientable surface. Both
338 of these algorithms follow a high-level strategy similar to ours, based on Hass and Scott's results about singular
339 bigons, but neither algorithm computes an explicit sequence of homotopy moves. Instead, Arettines removes
340 singular bigons by permuting their intersections along each arc, and Despré and Lazarus remove singular bigons
341 by directly *smoothing* their endpoints. Further references can be found in Despré and Lazarus [77].

342 **Beyond 2-terminal planar graphs.** A vast amount of work has been done to extend the algorithms to planar
343 graphs with more than two terminals. Gitler [115] and Gitler and Sagols [116] proved that any three-terminal
344 planar graph can be reduced to a graph on the three terminals, confirming the speculation by Akers [5]. Poger [189]
345 provided an alternative and efficient algorithm to reduce any three-terminal planar graph using only $O(n^2)$ steps.
346 Archdeacon *et al.* [12] and Demasi and Mohar [76] characterized the four-terminal planar graphs that can be
347 reduced to just four vertices. Gitler [68, 115] proved that for any integer k , any planar graph with k terminals on
348 a common face can be reduced to a planar graph with $O(k^2)$ vertices. Gitler's results were significantly extended
349 by Colin de Verdière *et al.* [66, 67, 68] and Curtis *et al.* [71, 72, 73] to the theory of circular planar networks; see
350 also Postnikov [199] and Kenyon [156].

351 **ΔY -reducible graphs.** Gitler [115] proved that every K_5 -minor-free or $K_{3,3}$ -minor-free graph can be reduced to a
352 single vertex; Wagner [253] proved similar results for almost-planar graphs and almost-graphic matroids, building
353 on earlier matroid results of Truemper [243]; Truemper [242, Lemma 4] and several others [12, 115, 181, 184]
354 proved that the class of ΔY -reducible graphs is closed under minor; Archdeacon *et al.* [12] extended the result
355 to the class of terminal-reducible graphs, and characterized the class of ΔY -reducible projective-planar graphs;
356 Yu [259, 260] showed there are at least 68 billion forbidden minors obstructions for the class of ΔY -reducible
357 graphs, falling into 20 ΔY -equivalent classes.

358 The two obvious subclasses of ΔY -reducible graphs are the $\Delta \rightarrow Y$ -reducible graphs and the $Y \rightarrow \Delta$ -reducible
359 graphs: graphs that are reducible under degree-1 reductions, series-parallel reductions, and exactly one of the
360 two directions of ΔY transformation. These two classes of graphs are far more restrictive than the ΔY -reducible
361 graphs; indeed, they are both subclasses of partial 4-trees [166]. The characterizations and recognition algorithms
362 are known for both $\Delta \rightarrow Y$ -reducible graphs [191, 192, 193] and $Y \rightarrow \Delta$ -reducible graphs [14, 84, 194, 214].

363 **Algebraic structures for curves on surfaces.** The collection of multicurves forms a Lie bialgebra structure on
364 the surface, first noticed by Goldman [118] and Turaev [247]. See Chas [50, 51] for a modern treatment of the
365 topic. The electrical moves performed on curves is similar to the operation of the 0-Hecke monoid of the symmetric
366 groups (also known as the Richardson–Springer monoid) [237], which can be viewed as electrical moves on flat
367 braids. The main technical lemma in the monotonic tightening process for arbitrary annular curves of de Graaf
368 and Schrijver [125, Theorem 4] can be extended to Weyl groups and more generally to Coxeter groups [110].

369 1.6 Acknowledgment

370 A major part of the thesis is based on (and extended from) the joint work [43, 44, 45, 46, 47, 48] with the following
371 colleagues: Jeff Erickson, David Letscher, Arnaud de Mesmay, Saul Schleimer, Eric Sedgwick, Dylan Thurston, and
372 Stephan Tillmann. The author is extremely grateful for the opportunity to work with them.

373 Sections 3.1, 6.3, 6.4, and 7.2 contain results that are either new, or have been improved from the corresponding
374 versions in our earlier publications. Some of the other results in the thesis have also been rewritten to make the
375 terminology and presentation consistent.

Chapter 2

Preliminaries

I don't like to define my music. To me, music is pure emotion. It's language that can communicate certain emotions and the rhythms cuts across genders, cultures and nationalities. All you need to do is close your eyes and feel those emotions.

— Yanni

I respectfully disagree.

— Laurel

We assume the readers are familiar with basic terminologies and definitions in graph theory and topology. We refer the interested readers to the following references. For basic graph theory, see Diestel [80] and West [254]. For topology and manifolds, see Massey [176] and Lee [163]. For topological graph theory, see Mohar-Thomassen [179] and Lando-Zvonkin [160]. For combinatorial topology, see Stillwell [232].

2.1 Surfaces

Intuitively speaking, a **2-dimensional manifold with boundary** is a topological space where locally the neighborhood of any point in the interior of the space looks like an Euclidean plane, the neighborhood of any point on the boundary of the space looks like an Euclidean half-plane. A **surface** Σ is a 2-dimensional manifold, possibly with boundary. All surfaces are assumed to be connected unless stated otherwise. Every point $x \in \Sigma$ lies in an open neighborhood that is either homeomorphic to the plane \mathbb{R}^2 or homeomorphic to an open half-plane with x on its boundary. The points with half-plane neighborhoods form the **boundary** of Σ ; the **interior** of Σ is the complement of its boundary.

The **genus** of an orientable surface is intuitively the number of *holes* the surface has. The **Euler characteristic** $\chi(\Sigma)$ of a genus- g orientable surface Σ with b boundary components is equal to $2 - 2g - b$. Except for a few places (which we will mention explicitly), all the surfaces in the thesis are **orientable**, which means that there is a consistent choice of the normal vectors everywhere on the surface. In other words, locally on the surface, words like “clockwise”, “counter-clockwise”, “left”, and “right” are all well-defined. One of the most fundamental results in combinatorial topology is that all surfaces can be classified by their *genus*, *number of boundary components*, and *orientability* [25, 81, 106, 148, 177, 220]. (For an extended survey on the history, see Gallier and Xu [108].)

2.2 Curves and Graphs on Surfaces

2.2.1 Curves

Formally, a **closed curve** or a **circle** in a surface Σ is a continuous map γ from 1-dimensional circle S^1 to Σ , and a **path** in Σ is a continuous map $\eta: [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$. Depending on the context, we sometimes abuse the terminology

and refer to a continuous map $\eta: (0, 1) \rightarrow \Sigma$ as a *path* as well. We call the two points $\eta(0)$ and $\eta(1)$ as *endpoints* of η . A *curve* is either a closed curve or a path; its parametrization equips the curve with an orientation. We sometimes say the curve is *directed* when we want to emphasize its orientation. A curve is *simple* if it is injective. A *subpath* of a curve γ is the restriction of γ to an interval; again, a subpath is simple if the restriction is injective. We consider only *generic* curves, which are injective except at a finite number of self-intersections, each of which is a transverse double point (which means, no more than two subpaths intersect at the same point, and the tangent vectors are not a multiple of the other's). The double points avoid the boundary of Σ . (Some authors preferred the term *normal* [104, 105, 238, 257] or *stable* [186].) Unless specified otherwise, we do not distinguish between the function γ and its image. Sometimes we refer to closed curves in the plane as *planar curves* and closed curves in the annulus as *annular curves*.

2.2.2 Graphs and Their Embeddings

A *graph* consists of some 0-dimensional points called *vertices* and a multiset containing pairs of vertices called *edges*. An *embedding* of a graph G into a surface Σ maps the vertices of G to distinct points and the edges of G to simple interior-disjoint paths between those points. The *faces* of an embedding are the components of the complement of its image in Σ . We sometimes refer to graphs with embeddings as *maps*. An embedding is *cellular* if every face is homeomorphic to an open disk. Any cellular embedding of G into an *orientable* surface can be encoded combinatorially by its *rotation system*, which records the counterclockwise order of edges incident to each vertex of G . Two cellular embeddings of G are homeomorphic if and only if they have the same rotation system, up to reflections of the surface. An *embedded graph* is a graph G together with a cellular embedding of G into some surface Σ . A *plane graph* is a planar graph with some given cellular embedding in the plane.

The *dual* of a cellularly embedded graph G is another cellularly embedded graph G^* on the same surface, whose vertices, edges, and faces correspond to the faces, edges, and vertices of G , respectively. Specifically, the dual graph G^* has a vertex f^* for every face f of G , and two vertices of G^* are connected by an edge if and only if the corresponding faces of G are separated by an edge. The dual graph G^* inherits a cellular embedding into Σ from the embedding of G . The dual of the dual of a cellularly embedded graph G is (homeomorphic to) the original embedded graph G .

Let G be a graph cellularly embedded on surface Σ ; each face of G being a disk implies that graph G must be connected. *Euler's formula* states that

$$n_v - n_e + n_f = \chi(\Sigma),$$

where n_v is the number of vertices, n_e is the number of edges, and n_f is the number of faces of G , respectively. In particular, any plane graph G has its number of vertices plus number of faces equals to its number of edges plus 2.

2.2.3 Curves as 4-regular Maps

The image of any non-simple closed curve γ has a natural structure as a 4-regular map, whose *vertices* are the self-intersections of γ , *edges* are maximal subpaths between vertices, and *faces* are components of $\Sigma \setminus \gamma$. We emphasize that the faces of γ are not necessarily disks. Every vertex x of γ has four *corners* adjacent to it; these are the four components of $D_x \setminus \gamma$ where D_x is a small disk neighborhood of x . Two curves γ and γ' are *isomorphic* if their images define combinatorially equivalent maps; we will not distinguish between isomorphic curves.

2.2.4 Jordan Curve Theorem

Given a *simple* closed curve σ on the sphere, the classical *Jordan-Schönflies theorem* [149, 150, 215, 250] states that σ separates the sphere into exactly two connected components, each of which is simply-connected. The weaker result, without the simply-connectedness conclusion, is often known as the *Jordan curve theorem*. After projecting the curve σ into the plane, we refer to the two components of the complement of σ as the *interior* and the *exterior* of σ , depending on whether the component is bounded or not. Jordan-Schönflies theorem forms the basis of most of the arguments in the thesis. We will use the result implicitly without referring to its name. (A curious and tangled history regarding the proof(s) of the Jordan curve theorem(s) can be found in Jeff Erickson’s notes on computational topology [88, Note 1].)

2.2.5 Multicurves

A *multicurve* on surface Σ is a collection of one or more closed curves in Σ ; in particular, a *k-curve* is a collection of k circles. A multicurve is *simple* if it is injective, or equivalently, if it consists of pairwise disjoint simple closed curves. Again we only consider *generic* multicurves. The image of any multicurve is the disjoint union of simple closed curves and 4-regular maps. A *component* of a multicurve γ is any multicurve whose image is a connected component of the image of γ . We call the individual closed curves that comprise a multicurve its *constituent curves*; see Figure 2.1. Most of the definitions on curves can be extended properly to multicurves.

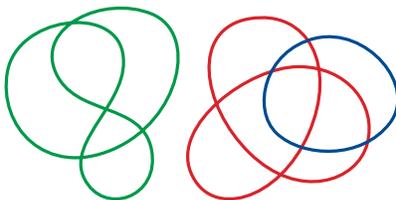


Figure 2.1. A multicurve with two components and three constituent curves, one of which is simple.

2.2.6 Tangles

A *tangle* Θ^1 is a collection of boundary-to-boundary paths $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_s$ in a closed topological disk Σ , which (self-)intersect only pairwise, transversely, and away from the boundary of Σ . This terminology is borrowed from knot theory, where a tangle usually refers to the intersection of a knot or link with a closed 3-dimensional ball [57, 69]; our tangles are perhaps more properly called *flat tangles*, as they are images of tangles under appropriate projection. (Our tangles are unrelated to the obstructions to small branchwidth introduced by Robertson and Seymour [206].) Transforming a curve into a tangle is identical to (an inversion of) the *flarb* operation defined by Allen *et al.* [8].

We call each individual path γ_i a *strand* of the tangle. The *boundary* of a tangle Θ is the boundary of the disk Σ that defines Θ ; we usually denote the boundary by σ . By the Jordan-Schönflies theorem, we can assume without loss of generality that σ is actually a Euclidean circle. We can obtain a tangle from any closed curve γ by considering its restriction to any closed disk whose boundary σ intersects γ transversely away from its vertices; we call this restriction the *interior tangle* of σ .

The strands and boundary of any tangle define a plane graph whose boundary vertices each have degree 3 and whose interior vertices each have degree 4.

¹Pronounced “Terra”.

2.3 Homotopy

A **homotopy** between two closed curves γ and γ' on the same surface Σ is a continuous deformation from one curve to the other. Formally this is a continuous map $H: S^1 \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$ such that $H(\cdot, 0) = \gamma$ and $H(\cdot, 1) = \gamma'$. Similarly, a **homotopy** between two paths η and η' is a continuous deformation that keeps the endpoints fixed. Formally this is a continuous map $H: [0, 1] \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$ such that $H(\cdot, 0) = \eta$, and $H(\cdot, 1) = \eta'$, and both $H(0, \cdot)$ and $H(1, \cdot)$ are constant functions. Two curves are **homotopic**, or in the same **homotopy class**, if there is a homotopy from one to the other. A closed curve γ is **contractible** if it is homotopic to a constant curve; intuitively, this says that γ can be continuously contracted to a single point. Otherwise we say γ is **non-contractible**. The definition of homotopy extends naturally to multicurves.

A multicurve γ on a surface Σ can be **tightened** via homotopy to another multicurve γ' with minimum number of self-intersections. A multicurve is **homotopically tight (h-tight for short)** if no homotopy leads to a multicurve with fewer vertices. As any contractible curve γ can be made simple through homotopy [135], we sometimes refer to the tightening process of a contractible curve γ as **simplifying** γ .

Similarly, a tangle is **tight** if no homotopy of the strands leads to another tangle with fewer vertices, or **loose** otherwise.

2.3.1 Covering Spaces and Fundamental Groups

A surface $\tilde{\Sigma}$ is a **covering space** of another surface Σ if there is a **covering map** from $\tilde{\Sigma}$ to Σ ; that is, a continuous map $\pi: \tilde{\Sigma} \rightarrow \Sigma$ so that each point x on Σ has a neighborhood $U \subseteq \Sigma$ so that $\pi^{-1}(U)$ is a union of disjoint open sets $U_1 \cup U_2 \cup \dots$, and, for any i , the restriction $\pi|_{U_i}: U_i \rightarrow U$ is a homeomorphism. The **universal covering space** $\hat{\Sigma}$ (or **universal cover** for short) is the unique simply-connected covering space of Σ .

The **fundamental group** $\pi_1(\Sigma)$ of a surface Σ consists of all equivalence classes of closed curves passing through an arbitrary fixed basepoint on Σ up to homotopy, where the group operation comes from concatenating two curves at the fixed point. (For any path-connected space like surfaces, the result is independent to the choice of the basepoint up to isomorphism.)

There is a one-to-one correspondence between subgroups of $\pi_1(\Sigma)$ and covering spaces of Σ . To be precise, given any subgroup Γ of $\pi_1(\Sigma)$, each element α in group Γ acts on the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$ by moving the points according to the path that projects to the closed curve in Σ representing the element α . one can construct covering space $\tilde{\Sigma}_\Gamma$ of Σ as the **quotient space** $\hat{\Sigma}/\Gamma$, by identifying all the points in the same orbit under the action of Γ on the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$. For example, the trivial subgroup of $\pi_1(\Sigma)$ corresponds exactly to the universal cover of Σ .

2.3.2 Lifting

Let Σ be a surface and $\tilde{\Sigma}$ be a covering space of Σ with covering map π . A **lift** of a path η in Σ to $\tilde{\Sigma}$ is a path $\tilde{\eta}$ in $\tilde{\Sigma}$ such that $\eta = \pi \circ \tilde{\eta}$. A **lift** of a closed curve γ in Σ to $\tilde{\Sigma}$ is an infinite path $\tilde{\gamma}: \mathbb{R} \rightarrow \tilde{\Sigma}$ such that $\gamma(t \bmod 1) = \pi(\tilde{\gamma}(t))$. We sometimes view the closed curve γ as a path γ_x starting and ending at the same point x in Σ , and therefore abuse the terminology and refer to the lift of the path γ_x as **lift** of γ (at basepoint x) instead. Observe that the lift of γ at basepoint x is always a subpath of the lift of γ . A **translate** of a lift $\tilde{\alpha}$ is any other lift of α to the same covering space; equivalently, two paths $\tilde{\alpha}, \tilde{\beta}: [0, 1] \rightarrow \tilde{\Sigma}$ are translates of each other if and only if $\pi \circ \tilde{\alpha} = \pi \circ \tilde{\beta}$.

The **homotopy lifting property** guarantees that any homotopy H from a curve γ to another curve γ' on Σ lifts to a homotopy \tilde{H} from $\tilde{\gamma}$ to $\tilde{\gamma}'$ on the covering space $\tilde{\Sigma}$. If we decompose the homotopies H and \tilde{H} into homotopy

506 moves, any homotopy move in \tilde{H} corresponds to a homotopy move in H by projection; however there might be
 507 additional homotopy moves in H where the strands involved are projected from different parts of the lift on $\tilde{\Sigma}$.

508 2.4 Combinatorial Properties of Curves

509 2.4.1 Monogons and Bigons

510 A *monogon* in a closed curve γ on surface Σ is a subpath of γ that begins and ends at some vertex x , intersects
 511 itself only at x , and bounds a disk in Σ containing exactly one of the four corners at x . A *bigon* in γ consists of
 512 two simple interior-disjoint subpaths of γ , sharing endpoints x and y , that together bound a disk in Σ containing
 513 exactly one corner at x and one at y . Since each subpath is simple, the vertices x and y are distinct.

514 We sometimes refer to the interior tangle of the boundary curve of the disk corresponding to the monogon
 515 (respectively, the bigon) as the *interior tangle* of the monogon (respectively, the bigon). A monogon or bigon is
 516 *empty* if its interior bigon does not intersect the rest of γ . A bigon β is *minimal* if its interior tangle Θ does not
 517 contain a smaller bigon, and no strand of Θ forms a bigon with β by intersecting either bounding path of β more
 518 than once.

519 2.4.2 Homotopy Moves

520 Consider the following set of local operations performed on any generic curve: **1→0 move** removes an *empty* mono-
 521 gon, **2→0 move** removes an *empty* bigon, and **3→3 move** moves a subpath across a self-intersection. Collectively
 522 we call them (and their inverses) *homotopy moves*.²

523 Each homotopy move can be executed by a homotopy inside an open disk embedded in Σ , meeting γ as
 524 shown in Figure 1.1. Conversely, Alexander’s simplicial approximation theorem [6], together with combinatorial
 525 arguments of Alexander and Briggs [7] and Reidemeister [202], imply that any generic homotopy between two
 526 closed curves can be decomposed into a finite sequence of homotopy moves. The definition of homotopy and the
 527 decomposition of homotopies into homotopy moves extend naturally to multicurves and tangles.

528 2.4.3 Signs and Winding Numbers

529 We adopt a standard sign convention for vertices first used by Gauss [109]. Choose an arbitrary basepoint $\gamma(0)$
 530 and orientation for the curve. For each vertex x , we define $\text{sgn}(x) = +1$ if the first traversal through the vertex
 531 crosses the second traversal from right to left, and $\text{sgn}(x) = -1$ otherwise. See Figure 2.2.

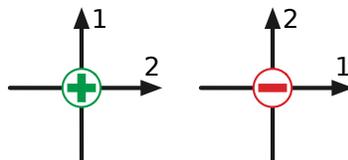


Figure 2.2. Gauss’s sign convention.

²Unlike the situation for Reidemeister moves on knots, there is no consistent naming for these local operations. Others called them Titus moves [104, 105]; shadow moves [246, 248]; perestroikas [15, 16]; Reidemeister-type moves [125, 196]; elementary moves [187]; basic moves [185]; and so on. Here we attempt to resolve the situation once and for all by proposing yet another name.

Let γ be a generic closed curve in the plane, and let p be any point not in the image of γ . Let ρ be any ray from p to infinity that intersects γ transversely. The *winding number* $wind(\gamma, p)$ is the number of times γ crosses ρ from right to left, minus the number of times γ crosses ρ from left to right. The winding number does not depend on the particular choice of ray ρ . All points in the same face of γ have the same winding number; the winding numbers of two adjacent faces differ by 1, with the higher winding number on the left side of the edge. If p lies on the curve γ , we define $wind(\gamma, p)$ to be the average of the winding numbers of the faces incident to p with appropriate multiplicity—two faces if p lies on an edge, four if p is a vertex. The winding number of a vertex is always an integer.

The *winding number* of a directed closed curve γ in the annulus is the number of times any generic path ρ from one fixed boundary component to the other crosses γ from left to right, minus the number of times ρ crosses γ from right to left. Two directed closed curves in the annulus are homotopic if and only if their winding numbers are equal [142].

2.5 Relating Graphs to Curves

2.5.1 Medial Construction

The *medial graph* of a graph G embedded on surface Σ , which we denote G^\times , is another graph embedded on the same surface whose vertices correspond to the edges of G and whose edges correspond to incidences (with multiplicity) between vertices of G and faces of G . Two vertices of G^\times are connected by an edge if and only if the corresponding edges in G are consecutive in cyclic order around some vertex, or equivalently, around some face in G . Every vertex in every medial graph has degree 4; thus, every medial graph is the image of a multicurve. Conversely, the image of every non-simple multicurve is the medial graph of some embedded graph on Σ . The medial graphs of any cellularly embedded graph G and its dual G^* are identical. To avoid trivial boundary cases, we define the medial graph of an isolated vertex to be a circle. We call an embedded graph G *unicursal* if its medial graph G^\times is the image of a single closed curve.

The medial graph G^\times of any 2-terminal plane graph G is properly considered as a multicurve in the annulus; the faces of G^\times that correspond to the terminals are removed from the surface. In general, medial graph G^\times of any k -terminal graph G embedded on surface Σ can be viewed as a multicurve on Σ with all faces of G^\times representing terminals of G being removed.

2.5.2 Facial Electrical Moves

The *facial electrical transformations* consist of six operations in three dual pairs: *degree-1 reduction*, *series-parallel reduction*, and ΔY *transformation*, as shown in Figure 1.2. (In Chapter 1 we simply called them *electrical transformations*; from this point on throughout the rest of the thesis, we reserve that name for the general set of transformations performed on arbitrary graphs without embeddings.) Facial electrical transformations on any graph G embedded in surface Σ correspond to local operations in the medial graph G^\times on the same surface that closely resemble homotopy moves. Each degree-1 reduction in G corresponds to a $1 \rightarrow 0$ move in G^\times , and each ΔY transformation in G corresponds to a $3 \rightarrow 3$ move in G^\times . A series-parallel reduction in G contracts an empty bigon in G^\times to a single vertex. Extending our earlier notation, we call this operation a **2** \rightarrow **1** *move*. We collectively refer to these operations and their inverses as *medial electrical moves*; see Figure 1.3.

A multicurve is *electrically tight* (*e-tight* for short), if no sequence of medial electrical moves leads to another

570 multcurve with fewer vertices. We use the terminology “tight” for both electrical and homotopic reductions. This
 571 is not a coincidence; we will justify its usage in Section 7.2.4.

572 2.5.3 Depths of Planar and Annular Multicurves

573 For any planar multcurve γ and any point p in the plane, let $\mathit{depth}(p, \gamma)$ denote the minimum number of times a
 574 path from p to infinity crosses γ . Any two points in the same face of γ have the same depth, so each face f has a
 575 well-defined depth, which is its distance to the outer face in the dual graph of γ ; see Figure 5.1. The depth of the
 576 multcurve, denoted $\mathit{depth}(\gamma)$, is the maximum depth of the faces of γ ; and the **depth-sum potential** $D\Sigma(\gamma)$ (or just
 577 **potential**) is the sum of depths of all the faces of γ . Euler’s formula implies that any 4-regular plane graph with n
 578 vertices has exactly $n+2$ faces; thus, for any multcurve γ with n vertices, we have $n+1 \leq D\Sigma(\gamma) \leq (n+1) \cdot \mathit{depth}(\gamma)$.

579 Depths and potential of a tangle Θ are defined exactly the same as for planar curves: The depth of any face f
 580 of Θ is its distance to the outer face in the dual graph Θ^* ; the depth of the tangle is its maximum face depth; and
 581 the potential $D\Sigma(\Theta)$ of the tangle is the sum of all face depths.

582 The **depth** of any multcurve γ in the annulus is the minimum number of times a path from one boundary
 583 to the other crosses γ . Notice how this definition differs from the one for planar multcurves. If we embed the
 584 annulus in the punctured plane $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus o$, the depth of the annular multcurve γ is in fact equivalent to $\mathit{depth}(o, \gamma)$.
 585 Just as the winding number around the boundaries is a complete homotopy invariant for annular curves, the depth
 586 turns out to be a complete invariant for facial electrical moves on annular multcurves. (See Section 7.2.3.) By
 587 definition the inequality $|\mathit{wind}(\gamma, o)| \leq \mathit{depth}(o, \gamma)$ holds.

588 2.5.4 Smoothing

589 Suppose that γ is a generic closed curve and x is a vertex of γ . Let D_x be a small disk neighborhood of x . Then
 590 we may **smooth** the curve γ at x by removing $\gamma \cap D_x$ from γ and adding in two components of $\partial D_x \setminus \gamma$ to obtain
 591 another 4-regular map. Following Giller [113, 143], we refer to the resulting curve as a **smoothing** of γ .³ There are
 592 two types of smoothings. One results in another closed curve, with the orientation of one subpath of γ reversed;
 593 the other breaks γ into a pair of closed curves, each retaining its original orientation. In the latter smoothing, let
 594 γ_x^+ and γ_x^- respectively denote the closed curve locally to the left and to the right of x , as shown in Figure 2.3. For
 595 any vertex x and any other point p , we have $\mathit{wind}(\gamma, p) = \mathit{wind}(\gamma_x^+, p) + \mathit{wind}(\gamma_x^-, p)$. More generally, a **smoothing**
 596 of a multcurve γ is any multcurve obtained by smoothing a subset of its vertices. For any embedded graph G , the
 597 smoothings of the medial graph G^\times are precisely the medial graphs of minors of G .

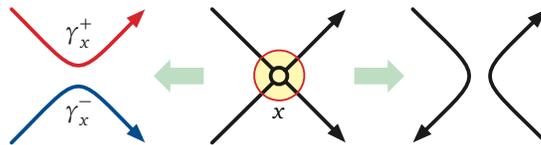


Figure 2.3. Smoothing a vertex. The left smoothing preserves orientation; the right smoothing preserves connectivity.

³The same operation is also known as a *split* or *splice* [152, 153]; an *opening* [219]; a *resolution* [170, 171]; or a *cut-and-paste* [182]. The word *smoothing* was later on picking up by Jones [147] and Kauffman [154].

2.6 Tightening Curves via Bigon Removal

As mentioned in the introduction, an algorithm to simplify any planar closed curve using at most $O(n^2)$ homotopy moves is implicit in Steinitz's proof that every 3-connected planar graph is the 1-skeleton of a convex polyhedron [230, 231]. Specifically, Steinitz proved that any non-simple planar multicurve or any loose tangle with no empty monogons contains a bigon. (It follows that a tangle is tight if every strand does not self-intersect, and every pair of strands intersects at most once.) Steinitz then proved that any *minimal* bigon with no empty monogons can be transformed into an empty bigon using a sequence of $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves, each removing one triangular face from the bigon. For the sake of completeness, we provide a succinct proof to the latter result here.

Lemma 2.1. *A minimal bigon that contains no empty monogons must have an empty triangle incident to either of the two bounding curves of the bigon; therefore such bigon can always be transformed into an empty bigon using a sequence of $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves.*

Proof: Let Θ be the interior tangle of the bigon. First we prove that all the strands of Θ are simple. Assume for contradiction that there is an inclusion-wise minimal monogon σ formed by some strand of Θ ; let's call the interior tangle of σ as Θ_σ . Now all the strands of Θ_σ must be simple. However because σ is not empty, any strand of Θ_σ forms a bigon with σ , contradicting to the fact that the bigon itself is minimal.

Each pair of strands of Θ intersects at most once. Fixing one of the two curves λ forming the bigon, every vertex v inside the bigon (as the intersection point of two strands α and β) defines a closed region R_v formed by α , β , and λ . Now we argue the following: Any vertex v with inclusion-wise minimal R_v such that v has a neighbor w on λ (when viewed as a graph) must contain no other vertices besides v and the two intersections $(\alpha \cup \beta) \cap \lambda$. Assume for the contrary, without loss of generality that the neighbor w of v on λ is $\alpha \cap \lambda$. Consider the vertex y on β that is adjacent to $z := \beta \cap \lambda$; by our assumption y is not equal to v . Denote the other curve that intersects y as γ ; by the above paragraph β does not self-intersect and thus $\gamma \neq \beta$. It is not hard to see now that R_y is contained in R_v , because γ must intersect λ on the subpath of λ between w and z as β and γ intersect at most once. This contradicts to the fact that R_v is inclusion-wise minimal. Therefore, there is an empty triangle incident to λ , and one $3 \rightarrow 3$ move will remove v from the bigon.

Recursively remove vertices from the bigon; the procedure will only stop when there are no vertices left. At this point all strands of Θ are simple and disjoint from each other; one can apply a sequence of $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves to remove all strands from Θ , and thus making the bigon empty. \square

Once the bigon is empty, it can be deleted with a single $2 \rightarrow 0$ or $2 \rightarrow 1$ move. Grünbaum [128] describes Steinitz's proof in more detail; indeed, Steinitz's proof is often incorrectly attributed to Grünbaum. See Gilmer and Litherland [114], Hass and Scott [136], Colin de Verdière *et al.* [68], or Nowik [185] for more modern treatments of Steinitz's technique.

Removing all the vertices inside the bigon takes as many $1 \rightarrow 0$ and $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves as the number of vertices, followed by another sequence of $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves that empties the bigon. This implies the following lemma, which will always be referred to as *Steinitz's bigon removal algorithm*:

Lemma 2.2. *Any minimal bigon whose interior tangle contains n vertices and s strands can be removed using $(n + s)$ $1 \rightarrow 0$ and $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves followed by a single $2 \rightarrow 0$ or $2 \rightarrow 1$ move.*

Chapter 3

Curve Invariant — Defect

Porque una parte importante de la relación amorosa, se juega en esta posibilidad de reconocer los defectos del otro y preguntarse, sinceramente, si se puede ser feliz a pesar de ellos.

— Gabriel Rolón, *Historias de diván: ocho relatos de vida*

We consider a numerical invariant¹ of closed curves in the plane introduced by Arnold [15, 16] and Aicardi [4] called *defect*. (We will only focus on planar curves in this chapter; later on we will discuss how to define defect invariant on higher genus surfaces in Section 4.2.) There are several equivalent definitions and closed-form formulas for defect and other closely related curve invariants [11, 56, 167, 169, 196, 222, 223, 252]; Polyak [195] proved that defect can be computed—or for our purposes, defined—as follows:

$$\text{defect}(\gamma) := -2 \sum_{x \not\sim y} \text{sgn}(x) \cdot \text{sgn}(y).$$

Here the sum is taken over all *interleaved* pairs of vertices of γ : two vertices $x \neq y$ are *interleaved*, denoted $x \not\sim y$, if they alternate in cyclic order— x, y, x, y —along γ . (The factor of -2 is a historical artifact, which we retain only to be consistent with Arnold’s original definitions [15, 16].) Even though the signs of individual vertices depend on the basepoint and orientation of the curve, the defect of a curve is independent of those choices. Moreover, the defect of any curve is preserved by any homeomorphism from the plane (or the sphere) to itself, including reflection. Trivially, every simple closed curve has defect zero.

Arnold [15, 16] originally defined two related first-order curve invariants St (“strangeness”) and J^+ by their changes under $2 \rightarrow 0$ and $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves, without giving explicit formulas. Aicardi [4] proved that the linear combination $2St + J^+$ is unchanged under $1 \rightarrow 0$ moves; Arnold dubbed this linear combination the “defect” of the curve [16]. Aicardi also described n -vertex curves with strangeness $-|n(n-1)/6|$ and $n(n+1)/2$ for all n ; Shumakovich [222, 223] later proved that all n -vertex curves have strangeness between these two extremes. (Nowik’s $\Omega(n^2)$ lower bound for regular homotopy moves [185] follows immediately from Aicardi’s analysis.) However, the curves with extremal strangeness actually have defect zero.

In Section 3.1, we compute the defect of the standard planar projection of any $p \times q$ torus knot where either $p \bmod q = 1$ or $q \bmod p = 1$, generalizing earlier results of Hayashi *et al.* [137, 139] and Even-Zohar *et al.* [95]. In particular, we show that the standard projection of the $p \times (p+1)$ torus knot, which has $p^2 - 1$ vertices, has defect $2\binom{p+1}{3}$.

Next, in Section 3.2, we prove that the defect of any generic closed curve γ with n vertices has absolute value at most $O(n^{3/2})$. Unlike most $O(n^{3/2})$ upper bounds involving planar graphs, our proof does *not* use the planar separator theorem [168]. First we prove that if the depth of the curve is $\Omega(\sqrt{n})$, there is a simple closed curve σ

¹Here the invariance is maintained under curve *isotopy*, which preserves the combinatorial structure of the curve. For our purpose (and convention in computer science) it would be better suited to refer to it as a *potential function*.

662 that contains at least s^2 vertices of γ , where s is the number of strands in the interior tangle of σ . We establish an
 663 inclusion-exclusion relationship between the defects of the given curve γ , the curves obtained by tightening γ
 664 either inside or outside σ , and the curve obtained by tightening γ on both sides of σ . This relationship implies an
 665 unbalanced “divide-and-conquer” recurrence whose solution is $O(n^{3/2})$.

666 We prove the following surprising observation in Section 3.3: Although the medial graph of a plane graph G
 667 depends on the embedding of G , the defect of the medial graph of G does not. This result has some implications
 668 on lower bounds for electrical transformations in Section 7.3.3. The chapter ends with some discussion on models
 669 of random knots and its connection to defect bounds (Section 3.4).

670 3.1 Defect Lower Bound

671 3.1.1 Flat Torus Knots

672 For any relatively prime integers p and q , let $T(p, q)$ denote the curve with the following parametrization, where
 673 θ runs from 0 to 2π :

$$674 T(p, q)(\theta) := ((\cos(q\theta) + 2) \cos(p\theta), (\cos(q\theta) + 2) \sin(p\theta)).$$

675 The curve $T(p, q)$ winds around the origin $|p|$ times, oscillates $|q|$ times between two concentric circles, and crosses
 676 itself exactly $(|p| - 1) \cdot |q|$ times. We call these curves *flat torus knots*.

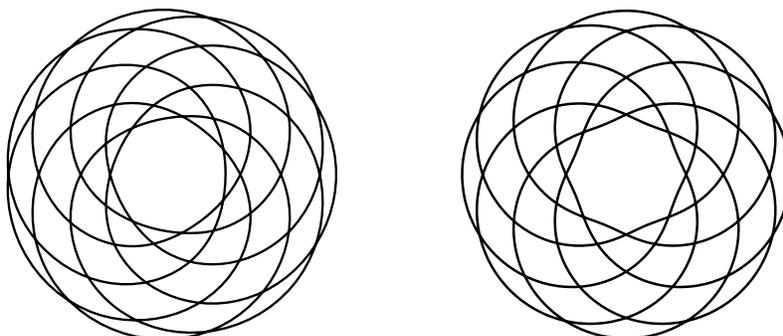


Figure 3.1. The flat torus knots $T(8, 7)$ and $T(7, 8)$.

677 Hayashi *et al.* [139, Proposition 3.1] proved that for any integer q , the flat torus knot $T(q + 1, q)$ has defect
 678 $-2\binom{q}{3}$. Even-Zohar *et al.* [95] used a star-polygon representation of the curve $T(p, 2p + 1)$ as the basis for a universal
 679 model of random knots; in our notation, they proved that $\text{defect}(T(p, 2p + 1)) = 4\binom{p+1}{3}$ for any integer p . In this
 680 section we simplify and generalize both of these results to all flat torus knots $T(p, q)$ where either $q \bmod p = 1$ or
 681 $p \bmod q = 1$. For purposes of illustration, we cut $T(p, q)$ along a spiral path parallel to a portion of the curve, and
 682 then deform the p resulting subpaths, which we call *strands*, into a “flat braid” between two fixed diagonal lines.
 683 See Figure 3.2.

684 **Lemma 3.1.** $\text{defect}(T(p, ap + 1)) = 2a\binom{p+1}{3}$ for all integers $a \geq 0$ and $p \geq 1$.

685 **Proof:** The curve $T(p, 1)$ can be reduced to a simple closed curve using only $1 \rightarrow 0$ moves, so its defect is zero. For
 686 the rest of the proof, assume $a \geq 1$.

687 We define a *stripe* of $T(p, ap + 1)$ to be a subpath from some innermost point to the next outermost point,
 688 or equivalently, a subpath of any strand from the bottom to the top in the flat braid representation. Each stripe

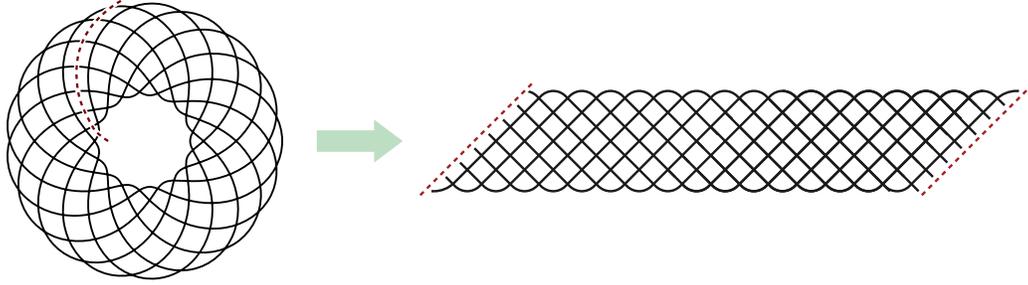


Figure 3.2. Transforming $T(8, 17)$ into a flat braid.

689 contains exactly $p - 1$ crossings. A block of $T(p, ap + 1)$ consists of $p(p - 1)$ crossings in p consecutive stripes;
 690 within any block, each pair of strands intersects exactly twice. We can reduce $T(p, ap + 1)$ to $T(p, (a - 1)p + 1)$ by
 691 straightening any block one strand at a time. Straightening the bottom strand of the block requires the following
 692 $\binom{p}{2}$ moves, as shown in Figure 3.3.

- 693 • $\binom{p-1}{2}$ $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves pull the bottom strand downward over one intersection point of every other pair of strands.
 694 Just before each $3 \rightarrow 3$ move, exactly one of the three pairs of the three relevant vertices is interleaved, so
 695 each move decreases the defect by 2.
- 696 • $(p - 1)$ $2 \rightarrow 0$ moves eliminate a pair of intersection points between the bottom strand and every other strand.
 697 Each of these moves also decreases the defect by 2.

698 Altogether, straightening one strand decreases the defect by $2\binom{p}{2}$. Proceeding similarly with the other strands,
 699 we conclude that $\text{defect}(T(p, ap + 1)) = \text{defect}(T(p, (a - 1)p + 1)) + 2\binom{p+1}{3}$. The lemma follows immediately by
 700 induction. □

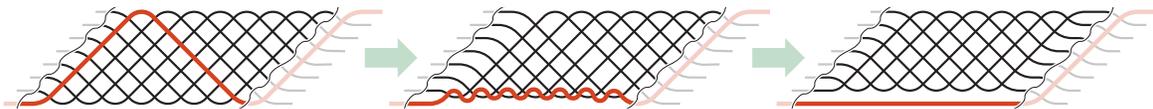


Figure 3.3. Straightening one strand in a block of $T(8, 8a + 1)$.

701 **Lemma 3.2.** $\text{defect}(T(aq - 1, q)) = 2a\binom{q}{3}$ for all integers $a \geq 0$ and $q \geq 1$.

702 **Proof:** The curve $T(q - 1, q)$ is simple, so its defect is trivially zero. For any positive integer a , we can transform
 703 $T(aq - 1, q)$ into $T((a - 1)q - 1, q)$ by incrementally removing the innermost q loops. We can remove the first loop
 704 using $\binom{q}{2}$ homotopy moves, as shown in Figure 3.4. (The first transition in Figure 3.4 just reconnects the top left
 705 and top right endpoints of the flat braid.)

- 706 • $\binom{q-1}{2}$ $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves pull the left side of the loop to the right, over the crossings inside the loop. Just before
 707 each $3 \rightarrow 3$ move, the three relevant vertices contain one interleaved pair, so each move *decreases* the defect
 708 by 2.
- 709 • $(q - 1)$ $2 \rightarrow 0$ moves pull the loop over $q - 1$ strands. The strands involved in each move are oriented in
 710 opposite directions, so these moves leave the defect unchanged.

711

- Finally, we can remove the loop with a single $1 \rightarrow 0$ move, which does not change the defect.

712

713

Altogether, removing one loop decreases the defect by $2\binom{q-1}{2}$. Proceeding similarly with the other loops, we conclude that $\text{defect}(T(aq-1, q)) = \text{defect}(T((a-1)q-1, q)) + 2\binom{q}{3}$. The lemma follows immediately by induction. \square

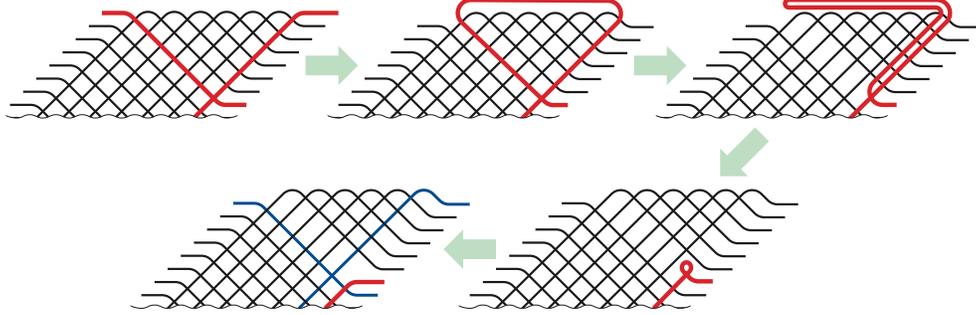


Figure 3.4. Removing one loop from the innermost block of $T(7a-1, 7)$.

714

715

From Lemma 3.1 and Lemma 3.2 one concludes that the defect of planar curves can be of $\Omega(n^{3/2})$ in the worst case.

716

3.1.2 Defects of arbitrary flat torus knots

717

718

719

The argument in Lemma 3.1 and Lemma 3.2 can be used to compute the defect of *any* flat torus knot $T(p, q)$ using a process similar to Euclid's algorithm. The only subtlety is determining how many $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves increase or decrease the defect.

720

721

722

723

724

Let $[p]$ denote the set $\{0, 1, \dots, p-1\}$, and consider the permutation $\pi: [p] \rightarrow [p]$ defined by setting $\pi(i) := iq \bmod p$. We call a triple (i, j, k) of distinct indices in $[p]$ *positive* if $(\pi(i), \pi(j), \pi(k))$ is an even permutation of (i, j, k) and *negative* otherwise. Finally, let $\Delta(p, q)$ denote the number of positive triples minus the number of negative triples. We easily observe that $\Delta(p, q) = \Delta(p, q \bmod p)$, and the proofs of Lemma 3.1 and Lemma 3.2 imply the recurrence

725

$$\text{defect}(T(p, q)) = \begin{cases} \text{defect}(T(p, q-p)) + 2\Delta(p, q) + 2\binom{p}{2} & \text{if } p < q, \\ \text{defect}(T(p-q, q)) - 2\Delta(q, p) & \text{if } p > q. \end{cases}$$

726

727

This recurrence immediately gives us an algorithm to compute $\text{defect}(T(p, q))$, similar to Euclid's algorithm. Indeed, we can express $\text{defect}(T(p, q))$ directly in terms of the continued fraction expansion of p/q as follows.

728

729

Let $r_0 := p$ and $r_1 := q$. For all $k \geq 1$ such that $r_k > 1$, define $a_k := \lfloor r_{k-1}/r_k \rfloor$ and $r_{k+1} := r_{k-1} \bmod r_k$. Then we have

730

$$\text{defect}(T(p, q)) = 2 \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^k \cdot a_k \cdot \Delta(r_k, r_{k-1}) + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 1 \\ k \text{ even}}} a_k \cdot \binom{r_k}{2}.$$

731

Using the above formula we can prove the *reciprocity formula* for the defect of flat torus knots.

732

Lemma 3.3. For any positive integers p and q , $\text{defect}(T(p, q)) + \text{defect}(T(q, p)) = (p-1)(q-1)$.

733 **Proof:** Let m be the smallest number such that $r_{m+1} = 1$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}
734 \quad \text{defect}(T(p, q)) + \text{defect}(T(q, p)) &= 2 \sum_{k=1}^m a_k \cdot \binom{r_k}{2} \\
735 &= \sum_{k=1}^m a_k \cdot r_k (r_k - 1) \\
736 &= \sum_{k=1}^m (r_{k-1} - r_{k+1})(r_k - 1) \\
737 &= (r_1 r_0 - r_m r_{m+1}) - (r_0 + r_1 - r_m - r_{m+1}) \\
738 &= (p-1)(q-1), \\
739
\end{aligned}$$

740 which proves the statement. □

741 One has the immediate corollary of Lemma 3.1, Lemma 3.2, and Lemma 3.3.

742 **Corollary 3.1.** For all integers $a \geq 0$ and $p, q \geq 1$, we have

$$743 \quad \text{defect}(T(ap+1, p)) = -2a \binom{p}{3} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{defect}(T(p, ap-1)) = -2a \binom{p}{3} + 2a \binom{p}{2} - 2(p-1).$$

744 **Fibonacci flat torus knots.** An easy symmetry argument implies that the number of negative triples in π is
745 exactly $\frac{p}{3}I(p, q)$, where $I(p, q)$ is the number of *inversions* in π . A classical theorem of Meyer [178] states that

$$746 \quad I(p, q) = \frac{1}{2} \binom{p-1}{2} - 3p \cdot s(q, p).$$

747 Here $s(q, p)$ is the standard *Dedekind sum*

$$748 \quad s(q, p) := \sum_{i=1}^{p-1} \left(\left(\frac{qi}{p} \right) \right) \left(\left(\frac{i}{p} \right) \right),$$

749 where $((\cdot))$ is the *sawtooth function*

$$750 \quad ((x)) := \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \text{ is an integer,} \\ (x \bmod 1) - \frac{1}{2} & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

751 (For further background on Dedekind sums, including a self-contained proof of Meyer's theorem, see Rademacher
752 and Grosswald [201].) It immediately follows that

$$753 \quad \Delta(p, q) = 2p^2 \cdot s(q, p),$$

754 where $s(q, p)$ is the standard Dedekind sum. Dedekind [74] proved the following reciprocity formula when p
755 and q are relatively prime:

$$756 \quad s(p, q) + s(q, p) = -\frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{12} \left(\frac{p}{q} + \frac{1}{pq} + \frac{q}{p} \right).$$

758 From this reciprocity formula and the easy identity $s(q, p) = s(q \bmod p, p)$, one can derive exact values for the
 759 Dedekind sum of consecutive Fibonacci numbers [10, p. 72],

$$760 \quad s(F_{n+1}, F_n) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } n \text{ is odd} \\ \frac{F_n^2 + F_{n-1}^2 - 3F_n F_{n-1} + 1}{12F_n F_{n-1}} = \frac{-F_{n-2}}{6F_n} & \text{if } n \text{ is even} \end{cases}$$

761 and the exact values for defect on Fibonacci flat torus knots follow from careful calculations.

762 **Lemma 3.4.** *Let n be an odd number. We have the following.*

$$763 \quad \begin{aligned} \text{defect}(T(F_{n+1}, F_n)) &= \frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) - F_n + 1 & \text{defect}(T(F_n, F_{n-1})) &= \frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) - F_n + 1 \\ 764 \quad \text{defect}(T(F_n, F_{n+1})) &= -\frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) + F_n F_{n+1} - F_{n+1} & \text{defect}(T(F_{n-1}, F_n)) &= -\frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) + F_n F_{n-1} - F_{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

766 As an immediate corollary, the absolute value of the defect of both flat torus knots $T(F_n, F_{n-1})$ and $T(F_{n-1}, F_n)$ are
 767 linear for any n .

768 **Proof:** First let us calculate $\text{defect}(T(F_n, F_{n-1}))$. Recall the defect formula using continued fraction of p/q :

$$769 \quad \text{defect}(T(p, q)) = 2 \sum_{k \geq 1} (-1)^k \cdot a_k \cdot \Delta(r_k, r_{k-1}) + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 1 \\ k \text{ even}}} a_k \cdot \binom{r_k}{2}.$$

770 In the case of Fibonacci flat torus knots, $r_k = F_{n-k}$, and $a_k = 1$ for all $k \leq n-3$ (because $r_{n-2} = F_2 = 1$). With the
 771 assumption that n is an odd number, we have

$$772 \quad \begin{aligned} \text{defect}(T(F_n, F_{n-1})) &= 2 \sum_{k \geq 1}^{n-3} (-1)^k \cdot \Delta(r_k, r_{k-1}) + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 1 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-3} \binom{r_k}{2} \\ 773 \quad &= 2 \sum_{k \geq 3}^{n-1} (-1)^k \cdot \Delta(F_k, F_{k+1}) + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} \binom{F_k}{2} && \text{[replace } k \text{ with } n-k] \\ 774 \quad &= 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} 2F_k^2 \cdot \frac{-F_{k-2}}{6F_k} + 2 \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} \binom{F_k}{2} && \text{[plug in } \Delta(F_k, F_{k+1})] \\ 775 \quad &= \frac{1}{3} \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} (3F_k^2 - 2F_k F_{k-2}) - \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} F_k && \text{[rearrange]} \\ 776 \quad &= \frac{1}{3} \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} (F_k^2 + 2F_k F_{k-1}) - \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} F_k && \text{[apply } F_k = F_{k-1} + F_{k-2}] \\ 777 \quad &= \frac{1}{3} \sum_{\substack{k \geq 3 \\ k \text{ even}}}^{n-1} ((F_k + F_{k-1})^2 - F_{k-1}^2) - F_n + 2 && \text{[apply } \sum_{0 \leq i < n} F_{2i} = F_{2n-1} - 1] \\ 778 \quad &= \frac{1}{3}(F_n^2 - 1) - F_n + 1. && \text{[telescope sum]} \end{aligned}$$

780 Similarly we can calculate $\text{defect}(T(F_{n+1}, F_n))$. (In fact, the answer is exactly the same.) Applying the reciprocity
 781 formula (Lemma 3.3) gives us the last two equations. □

3.2 Defect Upper Bound

Polyak's formula [195] gives a straightforward quadratic upper bound on the defect of any closed curve in the plane. In this section, we prove an $O(n^{3/2})$ upper bound on the absolute value of the defect for any planar curves, using a recursive inclusion-exclusion argument. This bound matches the asymptotic worst case behavior of defect among all planar curves, as demonstrated in Section 3.1. Throughout this section, let γ be an arbitrary non-simple closed curve in the plane, and let n be the number of vertices of γ .

3.2.1 Winding Numbers and Diameter

First we derive an upper bound in terms of the depth of the curve. We parametrize γ as a function $\gamma: [0, 1] \rightarrow \mathbb{R}^2$, where $\gamma(0) = \gamma(1)$ is an arbitrarily chosen basepoint. For each vertex x of γ , let γ_x denote the closed subpath of γ from the first occurrence of x to the second. More formally, if $x = \gamma(u) = \gamma(v)$ where $0 < u < v < 1$, then γ_x is the closed curve defined by setting $\gamma_x(t) := \gamma((1-t)u + tv)$ for all $0 \leq t \leq 1$.

Lemma 3.5. *For every vertex x , we have $\sum_{y \not\sim x} \text{sgn}(y) = 2 \text{wind}(\gamma_x, x) - 2 \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(0)) - \text{sgn}(x)$.*

Proof: Our proof follows an argument of Titus [238, Theorem 1].

Fix a vertex $x = \gamma(u) = \gamma(v)$, where $0 < u < v < 1$. Let α_x denote the subpath of γ from $\gamma(0)$ to $\gamma(u - \varepsilon)$, and let ω_x denote the subpath of γ from $\gamma(v + \varepsilon)$ to $\gamma(1) = \gamma(0)$, for some sufficiently small $\varepsilon > 0$. Specifically, we choose ε such that there are no vertices $\gamma(t)$ where $u - \varepsilon \leq t < u$ or $v < t \leq v + \varepsilon$. (See Figure 3.5.) A vertex y interleaves with x if and only if y is an intersection point of γ_x with either α_x or ω_x , so

$$\sum_{y \not\sim x} \text{sgn}(y) = \sum_{y \in \alpha_x \cap \gamma_x} \text{sgn}(y) + \sum_{y \in \gamma_x \cap \omega_x} \text{sgn}(y).$$

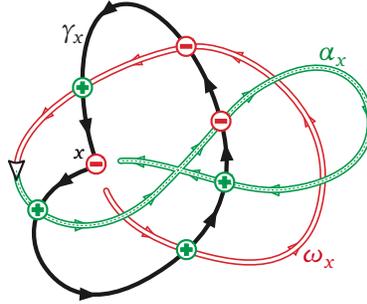


Figure 3.5. Proof of Lemma 3.5: $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, x) = +1 - 1 + 1 - \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$

Now suppose we move a point p continuously along the path α_x , starting at the basepoint $\gamma(0)$. The winding number $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, p)$ changes by 1 each time this point γ_x . Each such crossing happens at a vertex of γ that lies on both α_x and γ_x ; if this vertex is positive, $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, p)$ increases by 1, and if this vertex is negative, $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, p)$ decreases by 1. It follows that

$$\sum_{y \in \alpha_x \cap \gamma_x} \text{sgn}(y) = \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(u - \varepsilon)) - \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(0)).$$

Symmetrically, if we move a point p backward along ω_x from the basepoint, the winding number $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, p)$ increases (resp. decreases) by 1 whenever $\gamma(t)$ passes through a positive (resp. negative) vertex in $\omega_x \cap \gamma_x$; see

the red path in Figure 3.5. Thus,

$$\sum_{y \in \omega_x \cap \gamma_x} \text{sgn}(y) = \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(v + \varepsilon)) - \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(0)).$$

Finally, our sign convention for vertices implies

$$\text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(u - \varepsilon)) = \text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(v + \varepsilon)) = \text{wind}(\gamma_x, x) - \text{sgn}(x)/2,$$

which completes the proof. \square

Lemma 3.6. *For any planar curve γ , we have $|\text{defect}(\gamma)| \leq 2n \cdot \text{depth}(\gamma) + n$.*

Proof: Polyak's defect formula can be rewritten as

$$\text{defect}(\gamma) = - \sum_x \text{sgn}(x) \left(\sum_{y \not\sim x} \text{sgn}(y) \right).$$

(This sum actually considers every pair of interleaved vertices twice, which is why the factor 2 is omitted.) Assume without loss of generality that the basepoint $\gamma(0)$ lies on the outer face of γ , so that $\text{wind}(\gamma_x, \gamma(0)) = 0$ for every vertex x . Then Lemma 3.5 implies

$$\text{defect}(\gamma) = \sum_x \text{sgn}(x) (\text{sgn}(x) - 2 \text{wind}(\gamma_x, x)) = n - 2 \sum_x \text{sgn}(x) \cdot \text{wind}(\gamma_x, x),$$

and therefore

$$|\text{defect}(\gamma)| \leq n + 2 \sum_x |\text{wind}(\gamma_x, x)|.$$

We easily observe that $|\text{wind}(\gamma_x, x)| \leq \text{depth}(x, \gamma_x) \leq \text{depth}(x, \gamma)$ for every vertex x ; the second inequality follows from the fact that no path crosses γ_x more times than it crosses γ . The lemma now follows immediately. \square

The quantity $\sum_x \text{sgn}(x) \cdot \text{wind}(\gamma_x, x)$ is equivalent, up to a factor of 4, to the curve invariant $\alpha(\gamma)$ introduced by Lin and Wang [167], which they defined as the limit of a certain integral (due to Bar-Natan [19]) over a smooth knot in \mathbb{R}^3 that projects to γ , as the knot approaches the plane of projection.

As we will see the upper bound $|\text{defect}(\gamma)| = O(n \cdot \text{depth}(\gamma))$ also follows from either our $O(n^{3/2})$ upper bound for homotopy moves (Lemma 5.1) which serves as an upper bound on defect (Lemma 4.1), or from the relation between number of medial electrical moves and defect (Theorem 7.2) and the electrical reduction algorithm of Feo and Provan [100].

3.2.2 Inclusion-Exclusion

Now let σ be a simple closed curve that intersects γ only transversely and away from its vertices. By the Jordan curve theorem, we can assume without loss of generality that σ is a Euclidean circle, the number of intersection points between γ and σ is even, and the intersection points are evenly spaced around σ . We arbitrarily refer to the two tangles defined by σ as the *interior* and *exterior* tangles of σ . Let z_0, z_1, \dots, z_{s-1} be the points in $\sigma \cap \gamma$ in order along γ (not in order along σ). These intersection points decompose γ into a sequence of s subpaths $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_s$; specifically, γ_i is the subpath of γ from z_{i-1} to $z_{i \bmod s}$, for each index i . Without loss of generality, every odd-indexed path γ_{2i+1} lies outside σ , and every even-indexed path γ_{2i} lies inside σ .

838 Let $\gamma \pitchfork \sigma$ and $\gamma \wr \sigma$ denote the closed curves that result from tightening the interior and exterior tangles of σ ,
 839 respectively.² To put it differently, let $\gamma \pitchfork \sigma$ denote a generic curve obtained from γ by continuously deforming
 840 all subpaths γ_i inside σ , keeping their endpoints fixed and never moving across σ , to minimize the number of
 841 intersections. (There may be several curves that satisfy the minimum-intersection condition; choose one arbitrarily.)
 842 Similarly, let $\gamma \wr \sigma$ denote any generic curve obtained by continuously deforming the subpaths γ_i outside σ to
 843 minimize intersections. Finally, let $\gamma \odot \sigma$ denote the generic curve obtained by deforming *all* subpaths γ_i to
 844 minimize intersections; in other words, $\gamma \odot \sigma := (\gamma \pitchfork \sigma) \wr \sigma = (\gamma \wr \sigma) \pitchfork \sigma$. See Figure 3.6.

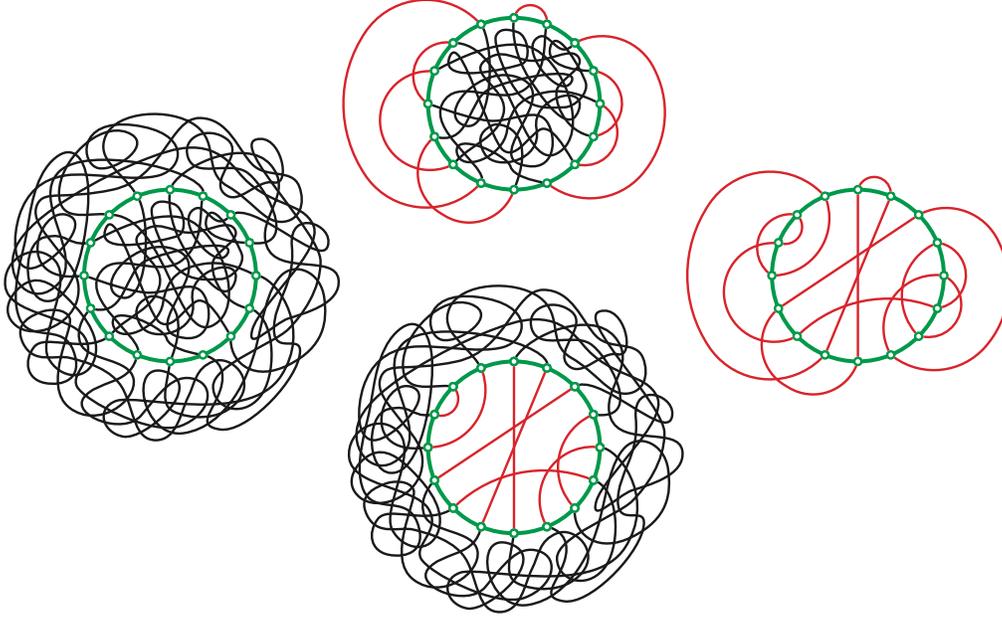


Figure 3.6. Clockwise from left: γ , $\gamma \wr \sigma$, $\gamma \odot \sigma$, and $\gamma \pitchfork \sigma$. The green circle in all four figures is σ .

845 To simplify notation, we define

$$846 \quad \mathit{defect}(x, y) := [x \wr y] \cdot \mathit{sgn}(x) \cdot \mathit{sgn}(y)$$

847 for any two vertices x and y , where $[x \wr y] := 1$ if x and y are interleaved and $[x \wr y] = 0$ otherwise. Then we
 848 can write the defect of γ as

$$849 \quad \mathit{defect}(\gamma) = -2 \sum_{x, y} \mathit{defect}(x, y).$$

850 Every vertex of γ lies at the intersection of two (not necessarily distinct) subpaths. For any index i , let $X(i, i)$
 851 denote the set of self-intersection points of γ_i , and for any indices $i < j$, let $X(i, j)$ be the set of points where γ_i
 852 intersects γ_j .

853 If two vertices $x \in X(i, k)$ and $y \in X(j, l)$ are interleaved, then we must have $i \leq j \leq k \leq l$. Thus, we can
 854 express the defect of γ in terms of crossings between subpaths γ_i as follows.

$$855 \quad \mathit{defect}(\gamma) = -2 \sum_{i \leq j \leq k \leq l} \sum_{x \in X(i, k)} \sum_{y \in X(j, l)} \mathit{defect}(x, y)$$

²We recommend pronouncing \pitchfork as “tightened inside” and \wr as “tightened outside”; note that the symbols \pitchfork and \wr resemble the second letters of “inside” and “outside”.

On the other hand, if $i < j < k < l$, then every vertex $x \in \gamma_i \cap \gamma_k$ is interleaved with every vertex of $y \in \gamma_j \cap \gamma_l$. Thus, we can express the contribution to the defect from pairs of vertices on four *distinct* subpaths as follows:

$$\mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma) := -2 \sum_{i < j < k < l} \sum_{x \in X(i, k)} \sum_{y \in X(j, l)} \mathit{sgn}(x) \cdot \mathit{sgn}(y)$$

We can express this function more succinctly as

$$\mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma) = -2 \sum_{i < j < k < l} \mathit{defect}(i, k) \cdot \mathit{defect}(j, l)$$

by defining

$$\mathit{defect}(i, j) := \sum_{x \in X(i, j)} \mathit{sgn}(x)$$

for all indices $i < j$.

The following lemma implies that continuously deforming the subpaths γ_i without crossing σ leaves the value $\mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma)$ unchanged, even though such a deformation may change the defect $\mathit{defect}(\gamma)$.

Lemma 3.7. *The value $\mathit{defect}(i, j)$ depends only on the parity of $i + j$ and the cyclic order of the endpoints of γ_i and γ_j around σ .*

Proof: There are only three cases to consider.

If $i + j$ is odd, then γ_i and γ_j lie on opposite sides of σ and therefore do not intersect, so $\mathit{defect}(i, j) = 0$. For all other cases, $i + j$ is even, which implies without loss of generality that $j \geq i + 2$.

Suppose the endpoints of γ_i and γ_j do not alternate in cyclic order around σ , or equivalently, that the corresponding subpaths of $\gamma \odot \sigma$ are disjoint. The Jordan curve theorem implies that there must be equal numbers of positive and negative intersections between γ_i and γ_j , and therefore $\mathit{defect}(i, j) = 0$.

Finally, suppose the endpoints of γ_i and γ_j alternate in cyclic order around σ , or equivalently, that the corresponding subpaths of $\gamma \odot \sigma$ intersect exactly once. Then $\mathit{defect}(i, j) = 1$ if the endpoints $z_i, z_j, z_{i-1}, z_{j-1}$ appear in clockwise order around σ and $\mathit{defect}(i, j) = -1$ otherwise. \square

Now consider an interleaved pair of vertices $x \in X(i, k)$ and $y \in X(j, l)$ where at least two of the indices i, j, k, l are equal. Trivially, i and k have the same parity, and j and l also have the same parity. If $i = j$ or $i = l$ or $j = k$ or $j = l$, then all four indices have the same parity. If $i = k$, then we must also have $i = j$ or $i = l$ (or both), so again, all four indices have the same parity. We conclude that x and y are either both inside σ or both outside σ .

Lemma 3.8. *For any closed curve γ and any simple closed curve σ that intersects γ only transversely and away from its vertices, we have $\mathit{defect}(\gamma) = \mathit{defect}(\gamma \cap \sigma) + \mathit{defect}(\gamma \cup \sigma) - \mathit{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma)$.*

Proof: Let us write $\mathit{defect}(\gamma) = \mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma) + \mathit{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma, \sigma) + \mathit{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma, \sigma)$, where

- $\mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma)$ considers pairs of vertices on four different subpaths γ_i , as above,
- $\mathit{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma, \sigma)$ considers pairs of vertices inside σ on at most three different subpaths γ_i , and
- $\mathit{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma, \sigma)$ considers pairs of vertices outside σ on at most three different subpaths γ_i .

Lemma 3.7 implies that

$$\mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma, \sigma) = \mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma \cap \sigma, \sigma) = \mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma \cup \sigma, \sigma) = \mathit{defect}^\#(\gamma \odot \sigma, \sigma).$$

The definitions of $\gamma \pitchfork \sigma$ and $\gamma \cup \sigma$ immediately imply the following:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma \pitchfork \sigma, \sigma) &= \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma \odot \sigma, \sigma) & \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma \pitchfork \sigma, \sigma) &= \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma, \sigma) \\ \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma \cup \sigma, \sigma) &= \text{defect}^\uparrow(\gamma, \sigma) & \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma \cup \sigma, \sigma) &= \text{defect}^\downarrow(\gamma \odot \sigma, \sigma) \end{aligned}$$

The lemma now follows from straightforward substitution. \square

Lemma 3.9. *For any closed curve γ and any simple closed curve σ that intersects γ only transversely and away from its vertices, we have $|\text{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma)| = O(|\gamma \cap \sigma|^3)$.*

Proof: Fix an arbitrary reference point $z \in \sigma \setminus \gamma$. For any point p in the plane, there is a path from p to z that crosses $\gamma \odot \sigma$ at most $O(s)$ times. Specifically, move from p to the nearest point on $\gamma \odot \sigma$, then follow $\gamma \odot \sigma$ to σ , and finally follow σ to the reference point z . It follows that $\text{depth}(\gamma \odot \sigma) = O(s)$. The curve $\gamma \odot \sigma$ has at most $2\binom{s/2}{2} = O(s^2)$ vertices. The bound $|\text{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma)| = O(s^3)$ now immediately follows from Lemma 3.6. \square

3.2.3 Divide and Conquer

We call a simple closed curve σ *useful* for γ if σ intersects γ transversely away from its vertices, and the interior tangle Θ of σ has at least s^2 vertices, where $s := |\sigma \cap \gamma|/2$ is the number of strands in Θ .³

Lemma 3.10. *Let γ be an arbitrary non-simple closed curve in the plane with n vertices. Either there is a useful simple closed curve for γ whose interior tangle has depth $O(\sqrt{n})$, or the depth of γ is $O(\sqrt{n})$.*

Proof: To simplify notation, let $d := \text{depth}(\gamma)$. For each integer j between 1 and d , let R_j be the set of points p with $\text{depth}(p, \gamma) \geq d + 1 - j$, and let \tilde{R}_j denote a small open neighborhood of the closure of $R_j \cup \tilde{R}_{j-1}$, where \tilde{R}_0 is the empty set. Each region \tilde{R}_j is the disjoint union of closed disks, whose boundary cycles intersect γ transversely away from its vertices, if at all. In particular, \tilde{R}_d is a disk containing the entire curve γ .

Fix a point z such that $\text{depth}(z, \gamma) = d$. For each integer j , let Σ_j be the unique component of \tilde{R}_j that contains z , and let σ_j be the boundary of Σ_j . Then $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_d$ are disjoint, nested, simple closed curves; see Figure 3.7. Let n_j be the number of vertices and let $s_j := |\gamma \cap \sigma_j|/2$ be the number of strands of the interior tangle of σ_j . For notational convenience, we define $\Sigma_0 := \emptyset$ and thus $n_0 = s_0 = 0$. We ignore the outermost curve σ_d , because it contains the entire curve γ . The next outermost curve σ_{d-1} contains every vertex of γ , so $n_{d-1} = n$.

By construction, for each j , the interior tangle of σ_j has depth $j + 1$. Thus, to prove the lemma, it suffices to show by induction that if none of the curves $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \dots, \sigma_{d-1}$ is useful, then $d = O(\sqrt{n})$.

Fix an index j . Each edge of γ crosses σ_j at most twice. Any edge of γ that crosses σ_j has at least one endpoint in the annulus $\Sigma_j \setminus \Sigma_{j-1}$, and any edge that crosses σ_j twice has both endpoints in $\Sigma_j \setminus \Sigma_{j-1}$. Conversely, each vertex in Σ_j is incident to at most two edges that cross σ_j and no edges that cross σ_{j+1} . It follows that $|\sigma_j \cap \gamma| \leq 2(n_j - n_{j-1})$, and therefore $n_j \geq n_{j-1} + s_j$. Thus, by induction, we have

$$n_j \geq \sum_{i=1}^j s_i$$

for every index j .

³We could define σ to be useful if there are at least $\alpha \cdot s^2$ vertices in the interior tangle, and then optimize α to minimize the resulting upper bound.

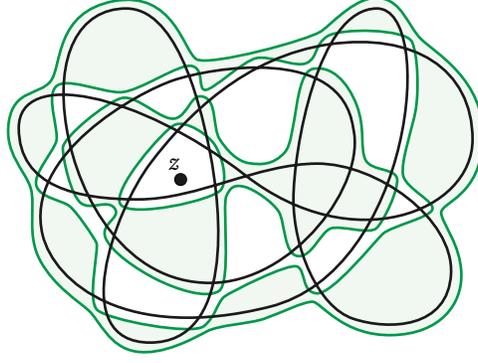


Figure 3.7. Nested depth cycles around a point of maximum depth.

922 Now suppose no curve σ_j with $1 \leq j < d$ is useful. Then we must have $s_j^2 > n_j$ and therefore

923
$$s_j^2 > \sum_{i=1}^j s_i$$

924 for all $1 \leq j < d$. Trivially, $s_1 \geq 1$, because γ is non-simple. A straightforward induction argument implies that
 925 $s_j \geq (j+1)/2$ and therefore

926
$$n = n_{d-1} \geq \sum_{i=1}^{d-1} \frac{i+1}{2} \geq \frac{1}{2} \binom{d+1}{2} > \frac{d^2}{4}.$$

927 We conclude that $d \leq 2\sqrt{n}$, which completes the proof. □

928 We are now finally ready to prove our main upper bound.

929 **Theorem 3.1.** $|\text{defect}(\gamma)| = O(n^{3/2})$ for every closed curve γ in the plane with n vertices.

930 **Proof:** We prove by induction on n that $\text{defect}(\gamma) \leq C \cdot n^{3/2}$ for any closed curve γ with n vertices, for some
 931 absolute constant C to be determined.

932 Let γ be an arbitrary closed curve with n vertices. Let σ be a simple closed curve that is useful for γ (that is,
 933 $m \geq s^2$) whose interior tangle has depth $O(\sqrt{n})$, as guaranteed by Lemma 3.10. (If there are no useful curves,
 934 then Lemma 3.6 implies that $|\text{defect}(\gamma)| = O(n^{3/2})$.) Let $s := |\gamma \cap \sigma|/2$. Lemma 3.8 implies

935
$$\text{defect}(\gamma) = \text{defect}(\gamma \cap \sigma) + \text{defect}(\gamma \cup \sigma) - \text{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma).$$

936 Suppose there are m vertices of γ lying in the interior of σ . Because the interior tangle of σ has depth $O(\sqrt{n})$, it
 937 follows that $\text{depth}(\gamma \cup \sigma) = O(\sqrt{n} + s)$, and therefore by Lemma 3.6 and Lemma 3.9 this implies

938
$$|\text{defect}(\gamma \cup \sigma)| + |\text{defect}(\gamma \odot \sigma)| = O((\sqrt{n} + s) \cdot (m + s^2/2)) = O(m\sqrt{n}).$$

939 Because σ is useful for γ , $\gamma \cap \sigma$ has at most $n - m + s^2/2 < n$ vertices. By the inductive hypothesis one has

940
$$|\text{defect}(\gamma)| \leq C(n - m + s^2/2)^{3/2} + c \cdot m\sqrt{n}$$

for some constant c . The inequality $(x - y)^{3/2} \leq (x - y)x^{1/2} = x^{3/2} - yx^{1/2}$ now implies

$$|\text{defect}(\gamma)| \leq Cn^{3/2} - C(m - s^2/2)\sqrt{n} + c \cdot m\sqrt{n}.$$

Finally, again because σ is useful, we must have $m - s^2/2 \geq m/2$, which implies

$$\begin{aligned} |\text{defect}(\gamma)| &\leq Cn^{3/2} - C(m/2)\sqrt{n} + c \cdot m\sqrt{n} \\ &= Cn^{3/2} - (C/2 - c)m\sqrt{n}. \end{aligned}$$

Provided $C/c \geq 2$, then $|\text{defect}(\gamma)| \leq Cn^{3/2}$, as required. \square

3.3 Medial Defect is Independent of Planar Embeddings

Recall that an embedded graph G is *unicursal* if its medial graph G^\times is the image of a single closed curve. The goal of the section is to prove that following surprising property about defect: The defect of the medial graph of an arbitrary unicursal planar graph G does not depend on its embedding.

Theorem 3.2. *Let G and H be planar embeddings of the same abstract planar graph. If G is unicursal, then H is unicursal and $\text{defect}(G^\times) = \text{defect}(H^\times)$.*

3.3.1 Navigating Between Planar Embeddings

A classical result of Adkisson [3] and Whitney [256] is that every 3-connected planar graph has an essentially unique planar embedding. Mac Lane [175] described how to count the planar embeddings of any biconnected planar graph, by decomposing it into its triconnected components. Stallmann [228, 229] and Cai [31] extended Mac Lane's algorithm to arbitrary planar graphs, by decomposing them into biconnected components. Mac Lane's decomposition is also the basis of the SPQR-tree data structure of Di Battista and Tamassia [78, 79], which encodes all planar embeddings of an arbitrary planar graph.

Mac Lane's structural results imply that any planar embedding of a 2-connected planar graph G can be transformed into any other embedding by a finite sequence of *split reflections*, defined as follows. A *split curve* is a simple closed curve σ whose intersection with the embedding of G consists of two vertices x and y ; without loss of generality, σ is a circle with x and y at opposite points. A split reflection modifies the embedding of G by reflecting the subgraph inside σ across the line through x and y .

Lemma 3.11. *Let G be an arbitrary 2-connected planar graph. Any planar embedding of G can be transformed into any other planar embedding of G by a finite sequence of split reflections.*

To navigate among the planar embeddings of arbitrary connected planar graphs, we need two additional operations. First, we allow split curves that intersect G at only a single cut vertex; a *cut reflection* modifies the embedding of G by reflecting the subgraph inside such a curve. More interestingly, we also allow degenerate split curves that pass through a cut vertex x of G twice, but are otherwise simple and disjoint from G . The interior of a degenerate split curve σ is an open topological disk. A *cut eversion* is a degenerate split reflection that everts the embedding of the subgraph of G inside such a curve, intuitively by mapping the interior of σ to an open circular disk (with two copies of x on its boundary), reflecting the interior subgraph, and then mapping

975 the resulting embedding back to the interior of σ . Structural results of Stallman [228, 229] and Di Battista and
 976 Tamassia [79, Section 7] imply the following.

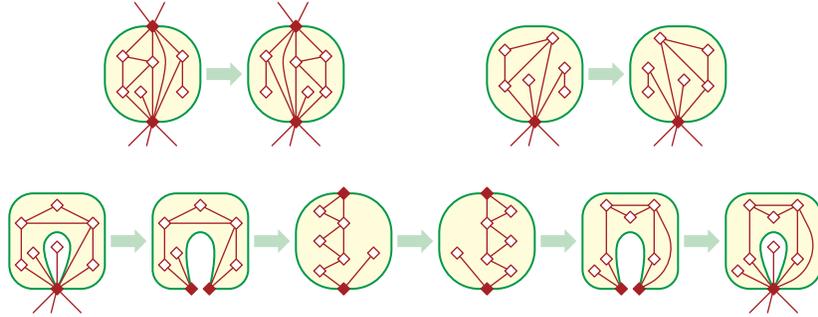


Figure 3.8. Top row: A regular split reflection and a cut reflection. Bottom row: a cut eversion.

977 **Lemma 3.12.** *Let G be an arbitrary connected planar graph. Any planar embedding of G can be transformed into*
 978 *any other planar embedding of G by a finite sequence of split reflections, cut reflections, and cut eversions.*

979 3.3.2 Tangle Flips

980 Now consider the effect of the operations stated in Lemma 3.12 on the medial graph G^\times . By assumption, G is
 981 unicursal so that G^\times is a single closed curve. Let σ be any (possibly degenerate) split curve for G . Embed G^\times so
 982 that every medial vertex lies on the corresponding edge in G , and every medial edge intersects σ at most once.
 983 Then σ intersects at most four edges of G^\times , so the tangle of G^\times inside σ has at most two strands. Moreover,
 984 reflecting (or everting) the subgraph of G inside σ induces a *flip* of this tangle of G^\times . Any tangle can be *flipped* by
 985 reflecting the disk containing it, so that each strand endpoint maps to a different strand endpoint; see Figure 3.9.
 986 Straightforward case analysis implies that flipping any tangle of G^\times with at most two strands transforms G^\times into
 987 another closed curve.



Figure 3.9. Flipping tangles with one and two strands.

988 The main result of this subsection is that the resulting curve has the same defect as G^\times .

989 **Lemma 3.13.** *Let γ be an arbitrary closed curve on the sphere. Flipping any tangle of γ with one strand yields*
 990 *another closed curve γ' with $\text{defect}(\gamma') = \text{defect}(\gamma)$.*

991 **Proof:** Let σ be a simple closed curve that crosses γ at exactly two points. These points decompose σ into two
 992 subpaths $\alpha \cdot \beta$, where α is the unique strand of the interior tangle and β is the unique strand of the exterior tangle.
 993 Let Σ denote the interior disk of σ , and let $\phi : \Sigma \rightarrow \Sigma$ denote the homeomorphism that flips the interior tangle.
 994 Flipping the interior tangle yields the closed curve $\gamma' := \text{rev}(\phi(\alpha)) \cdot \beta$, where *rev* denotes path reversal.

995 No vertex of α is interleaved with a vertex of β ; thus, two vertices in γ' are interleaved if and only if the
 996 corresponding vertices in γ are interleaved. Every vertex of $\text{rev}(\phi(\alpha))$ has the same sign as the corresponding
 997 vertex of α , since both the orientation of the vertex and the order of traversals through the vertex changed. Thus,
 998 every vertex of γ' has the same sign as the corresponding vertex of γ . We conclude that $\text{defect}(\gamma') = \text{defect}(\gamma)$. \square

999 **Lemma 3.14.** Let γ be an arbitrary closed curve on the sphere. Flipping any tangle of γ with two strands yields
 1000 another closed curve γ' with $\text{defect}(\gamma') = \text{defect}(\gamma)$.

1001 **Proof:** Let σ be a simple closed curve that crosses γ at exactly four points. These four points naturally decompose γ
 1002 into four subpaths $\alpha \cdot \delta \cdot \beta \cdot \varepsilon$, where α and β are the strands of the interior tangle of σ , and δ and ε are the
 1003 strands of the exterior tangle. Flipping the interior tangle either exchanges α and β , reverses α and β , or both;
 1004 see Figure 3.10. In every case, the result is a single closed curve γ' .

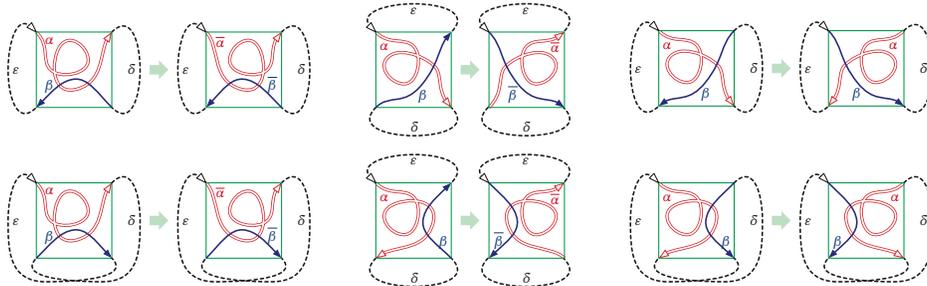


Figure 3.10. Flipping all six types of 2-strand tangle.

1005 Let γ' be the result of flipping the interior tangle. The curve $\gamma' \cup \sigma$ is just a reflection of $\gamma \cup \sigma$, which implies
 1006 that $\text{defect}(\gamma' \cup \sigma) = \text{defect}(\gamma \cup \sigma)$, and straightforward case analysis implies $\gamma' \cap \sigma = \gamma \cap \sigma$ and $\gamma' \circ \sigma = \gamma \circ \sigma$.
 1007 We conclude by the inclusion-exclusion formula for defect (Lemma 3.8) that

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{defect}(\gamma') &= \text{defect}(\gamma' \cap \sigma) + \text{defect}(\gamma' \cup \sigma) - \text{defect}(\gamma' \circ \sigma) \\
 &= \text{defect}(\gamma \cap \sigma) + \text{defect}(\gamma \cup \sigma) - \text{defect}(\gamma \circ \sigma) = \text{defect}(\gamma).
 \end{aligned}$$

1011 □

1012 Now Theorem 3.2 follows immediately from Lemmas 3.12, 3.13, and 3.14.

1013 3.4 Implications for Random Knots

1014 Finally, we describe some interesting implications of our results on the expected behavior of random knots,
 1015 following earlier results of Lin and Wang [167], Polyak [195], and new results of Even-Zohar, Hass, Linial, and
 1016 Nowik [95, 96, 97]. We refer the reader to Burde and Zieschang [27] or Kauffman [151] for further background
 1017 on knot theory, to Chmutov, Duzhin, and Mostovoy [57] for a detailed overview of finite-type knot invariants, and
 1018 Even-Zohar [94] for a survey and some new results on the random knot models; we include only a few elementary
 1019 definitions to keep the presentation self-contained.

1020 A **knot** is (the image of) a continuous injective map from the circle into \mathbb{R}^3 . Two knots are considered equivalent
 1021 (more formally, *ambient isotopic*) if there is a continuous deformation of \mathbb{R}^3 that deforms one knot into the other.
 1022 Knots are often represented by **knot diagrams**, which are 4-regular plane graphs defined by a generic projection
 1023 of the knot onto the plane, with an annotation at each vertex indicating which branch of the knot is “over” or
 1024 “under” the other. Call any crossing x in a knot diagram *ascending* if the first branch through x after the basepoint
 1025 passes over the second, and *descending* otherwise.

1026 The **Casson invariant** c_2 is the simplest finite-type knot invariant; it is also equal to the second coefficient of
 1027 the Conway polynomial [24, 198]. Polyak and Viro [197, 198] derived the following combinatorial formula for the

1028 Casson invariant of a knot diagram κ :

$$1029 \quad c_2(\kappa) = - \sum_{\text{descending } x} \sum_{\text{ascending } y} [x \bowtie y] \cdot \text{sgn}(x) \cdot \text{sgn}(y).$$

1030 Like defect, the value of $c_2(\kappa)$ is independent of the choice of basepoint or orientation of the underlying curve γ ;
 1031 moreover, if the knots represented by diagrams κ and κ' are equivalent, then $c_2(\kappa) = c_2(\kappa')$.

1032 Polyak [195, Theorem 7] observed that if a knot diagram κ is obtained from an arbitrary closed curve γ by
 1033 independently resolving each crossing as ascending or descending with equal probability, then one can relate the
 1034 expectation of Casson invariant $c_2(\kappa)$ and the defect of γ by

$$1035 \quad \mathbb{E}[c_2(\kappa)] = \text{defect}(\gamma)/8.$$

1036 The same observation is implicit in earlier results of Lin and Wang [167]; and (for specific curves) in the later
 1037 results of Even-Zohar *et al.* [95].

1038 Even-Zohar *et al.* [95] studied the distribution of the Casson invariant for two models of random knots, the
 1039 *Petaluma* model of Adams *et al.* [1, 2], which uses singular one-vertex diagrams consisting of $2p + 1$ disjoint
 1040 non-nested loops for some integer p , and the *star* model, which uses (a polygonal version of) the flat torus knot
 1041 $T(p, 2p + 1)$ for some integer p . Even-Zohar *et al.* prove that the expected value of the Casson invariant is $\binom{p}{2}/12$
 1042 in the *Petaluma* model and $\binom{p+1}{3}/2 \approx 0.03n^{3/2}$ in the *star* model. Later they studied the *Petaluma* model in further
 1043 details [96]; in particular, the probability that Casson invariant of a random knot is equal to a given value decreases
 1044 to zero as the number of petals grows.

1045 Our defect analysis in Section 3.2 implies an upper bound on the Casson invariant for knot diagrams generated
 1046 from *any* family of generic closed curves.

1047 **Corollary 3.2.** *Let γ be any generic closed curve with n vertices, and let κ be a knot diagram obtained by resolving*
 1048 *each vertex of γ independently and uniformly at random. Then $|\mathbb{E}[c_2(\kappa)]| = O(n^{3/2})$.*

1049 Our results also imply that the distribution of the Casson invariant depends strongly on the precise parameters
 1050 of the random model; even the sign and growth rate of $\mathbb{E}[c_2]$ depend on which curves are used to generate knot
 1051 diagrams. For example:

- 1052 • For random diagrams over the flat torus knot $T(p + 1, p)$, we have $\mathbb{E}[c_2(\kappa)] = -\binom{p}{3}/4 = -n^{3/2}/24 + \Theta(n)$.
- 1053 • For random diagrams over the Fibonacci flat torus knot $T(F_{k+1}, F_k)$, we have $\mathbb{E}[c_2(\kappa)] = \frac{1}{3}(F_k^2 - 1) - F_k + 1 =$
 1054 $n/3\phi + \Theta(\sqrt{n})$, where $\phi := (\sqrt{5} + 1)/2$ is the golden ratio.
- 1055 • For random diagrams over the connected sum $T(p - 1, p) \# T(p + 1, p)$, we have $\mathbb{E}[c_2(\kappa)] = 0$.

Chapter 4

Lower Bounds for Tightening Curves

Lower bounds are hard. But that doesn't mean that no progress can be made. To get a lower bound, it is required [...] that you make a (possible restrictive) model of all algorithms or data-structures that can solve your problem.

— Discrete lizard, *Computer Science Stack Exchange* q91156

In this chapter we prove the first non-trivial lower bounds on number of homotopy moves required to tighten closed curves, both in the plane and on higher-genus surfaces. First, in Section 4.1, we derive an $\Omega(n^{3/2})$ lower bound on number of homotopy moves required to simplify any planar curve, using lower bound results on defect we have in Section 3.1, and the fact that each homotopy move changes the defect of a closed curve by at most 2. As for planar multicurves, using winding-number arguments we prove that in the worst case, simplifying an arrangement of k closed curves requires $\Omega(n^{3/2} + nk)$ homotopy moves, with an additional $\Omega(k^2)$ term if the target configuration is specified in advance.

In Section 4.2, we consider curves on surfaces of higher genus. Extending the notion of defect invariant, we prove that $\Omega(n^2)$ homotopy moves are required in the worst case to transform one non-contractible closed curve to another on the torus, and therefore on any orientable surface. Results of Hass and Scott [135] imply that this lower bound is tight if the non-contractible closed curve is homotopic to a simple closed curve.

We then construct an infinite family of contractible curves on the annulus that require at least $\Omega(n^2)$ moves to tighten in Section 4.3, using a complete different curve invariant than defect. Our new lower bound generalizes to any surface that has the annulus as a covering space—that is, any surface except for the sphere, the disk, or the projective plane.

4.1 Lower Bounds for Planar Curves

Now we prove our lower bounds for simplifying closed curves in the plane through the defect invariant. Straight-forward case analysis [195] implies that any single homotopy move changes the defect of a curve by at most 2; the various cases are listed below and illustrated in Figure 4.1.

- A $1 \rightarrow 0$ move leaves the defect unchanged.
- A $2 \rightarrow 0$ move decreases the defect by 2 if the two disappearing vertices are interleaved, and leaves the defect unchanged otherwise.
- A $3 \rightarrow 3$ move increases the defect by 2 if the three vertices before the move contain an even number of interleaved pairs, and decreases the defect by 2 otherwise.

In light of this case analysis, the following lemma is trivial:

Lemma 4.1. *Simplifying any closed curve γ in the plane requires at least $|\text{defect}(\gamma)|/2$ homotopy moves.*

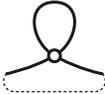
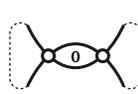
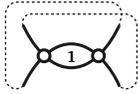
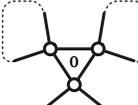
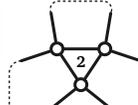
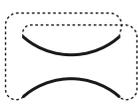
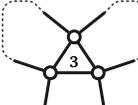
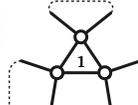
Move	1→0	2→0		3→3	
					
					
St	$-w$	0	0	+1	+1
J^+	$2w$	0	-2	0	0
defect	0	0	-2	+2	+2

Figure 4.1. Changes to Arnold’s invariants: St , J^+ , and defect incurred by homotopy moves. Numbers in each figure indicate how many pairs of vertices are interleaved; dashed lines indicate how the rest of the curve connects. The variable w shown in the 0→1 move column represents the winding number of the vertex.

As we have mentioned in Chapter 3, Arnold [15, 16] originally defined the curve invariants St and J^+ by their changes under 2→0 and 3→3 homotopy moves. Specifically, as shown in Figure 4.1, 3→3 moves change strangeness by ± 1 but do not affect J^+ ; 2→0 moves change J^+ by either 0 or 2 but do not affect strangeness.

Defect bound from either Lemma 3.1, Lemma 3.2, or Corollary 3.1 implies the following lower bound on number of homotopy moves, which is also implicit in the work of Hayashi *et al.* [139] and Even-Zohar *et al.* [95].

Theorem 4.1. *For every positive integer n , there are closed curves with n vertices whose defects are $n^{3/2}/3 - O(n)$ and $-n^{3/2}/3 + O(n)$, and therefore require at least $n^{3/2}/6 - O(n)$ homotopy moves to reduce to a simple closed curve.*

Proof: The lower bound follows from Lemma 3.1, Lemma 3.2, or Corollary 3.1 by setting $a := 1$. If n is a perfect square, then the flat torus knot $T(\sqrt{n} + 1, \sqrt{n})$ has n vertices and defect $-2\binom{\sqrt{n}}{3}$. If n is not a perfect square, we can achieve defect $-2\binom{\lfloor \sqrt{n} \rfloor}{3}$ by applying 0→1 moves to the curve $T(\lfloor \sqrt{n} \rfloor + 1, \lfloor \sqrt{n} \rfloor)$. Similarly, we obtain an n -vertex curve with defect $2\binom{\lfloor \sqrt{n+1} \rfloor + 1}{3}$ by adding monogons to the curve $T(\lfloor \sqrt{n+1} \rfloor, \lfloor \sqrt{n+1} \rfloor + 1)$. Lemma 4.1 now immediately implies the lower bound on homotopy moves. \square

4.1.1 Multicurves

Our previous results immediately imply that simplifying a multicurve with n vertices requires at least $\Omega(n^{3/2})$ homotopy moves; in this section we derive additional lower bounds in terms of the number of constituent curves. We distinguish between two natural variants of simplification: transforming a multicurve into an *arbitrary* set of disjoint simple closed curves, or into a *particular* set of disjoint simple closed curves.

Lemma 4.2. *Transforming a k -curve with n vertices in the plane into k arbitrary disjoint circles requires $\Omega(nk)$ homotopy moves in the worst case.*

Proof: For arbitrary positive integers n and k , we construct a multicurve with k disjoint constituent curves, all but one of which are simple, as follows. The first $k - 1$ constituent curves $\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_{k-1}$ are disjoint circles inside the

1105 open unit disk centered at the origin. (The precise configuration of these circles is unimportant.) The remaining
 1106 constituent curve γ_o is a spiral winding $n + 1$ times around the closed unit disk centered at the origin, plus a line
 1107 segment connecting the endpoints of the spiral; γ_o is the simplest possible curve with winding number $n + 1$ around
 1108 the origin. Let γ be the disjoint union of these k curves; we claim that $\Omega(nk)$ homotopy moves are required to
 1109 simplify γ . See Figure 4.2.

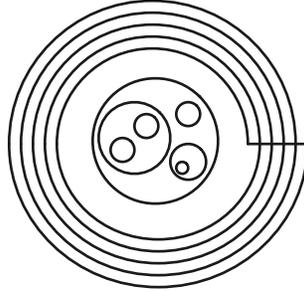


Figure 4.2. Simplifying this multicurve requires $\Omega(nk)$ homotopy moves.

1110 Consider the faces of the outer curve γ_o during any homotopy of γ . Adjacent faces of γ_o have winding numbers
 1111 that differ by 1, and the outer face has winding number 0. Thus, for any non-negative integer w , as long as the
 1112 maximum absolute winding number $\left| \max_p \text{wind}(\gamma_o, p) \right|$ is at least w , the curve γ_o has at least $w + 1$ faces (including
 1113 the outer face) and therefore at least $w - 1$ vertices, by Euler's formula. On the other hand, if any curve γ_i intersects
 1114 a face of γ_o , no homotopy move can remove that face until the intersection between γ_i and γ_o is removed. Thus,
 1115 before the simplification of γ_o is complete, each curve γ_i must intersect only faces with winding number 0, 1, or
 1116 -1 .

1117 For each index i , let w_i denote the maximum absolute winding number of γ_o around any point of γ_i :

$$1118 \quad w_i := \max_{\theta} \left| \text{wind}(\gamma_o, \gamma_i(\theta)) \right|.$$

1119 Let $W := \sum_i w_i$. Initially, $W = k(n + 1)$, and when γ_o first becomes simple, we must have $W \leq k$. Each homotopy
 1120 move changes W by at most 1; specifically, at most one term w_i changes at all, and that term either increases or
 1121 decreases by 1. The $\Omega(nk)$ lower bound now follows immediately. \square

1122 **Theorem 4.2.** *Transforming a k -curve with n vertices in the plane into an arbitrary set of k simple closed curves*
 1123 *requires $\Omega(n^{3/2} + nk)$ homotopy moves in the worst case.*

1124 We say that a collection of k disjoint simple closed curves is **nested** if some point lies in the interior of every
 1125 curve, and **unnested** if the curves have disjoint interiors.

1126 **Lemma 4.3.** *Transforming k nested circles in the plane into k unnested circles requires $\Omega(k^2)$ homotopy moves.*

1127 **Proof:** Let γ and γ' be two nested circles, with γ' in the interior of γ and with γ directed counterclockwise.
 1128 Suppose we apply an arbitrary homotopy to these two curves. If the curves remain disjoint during the entire
 1129 homotopy, then γ' always lies inside a face of γ with winding number 1; in short, the two curves remain nested.
 1130 Thus, any sequence of homotopy moves that takes γ and γ' to two non-nested simple closed curves contains at
 1131 least one $0 \rightarrow 2$ move that makes the curves cross (and symmetrically at least one $2 \rightarrow 0$ move that makes them
 1132 disjoint again).

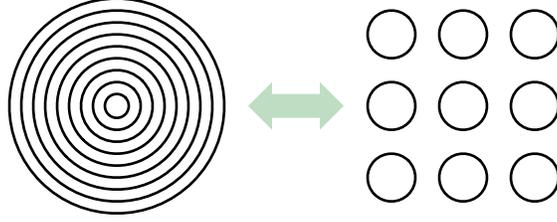


Figure 4.3. Nesting or unnesting k circles requires $\Omega(k^2)$ homotopy moves.

1133 Consider a set of k nested circles. Each of the $\binom{k}{2}$ pairs of circles requires at least one $0 \rightarrow 2$ move and one $2 \rightarrow 0$
 1134 move to unnest. Because these moves involve distinct pairs of curves, at least $\binom{k}{2}$ $0 \rightarrow 2$ moves and $\binom{k}{2}$ $2 \rightarrow 0$ moves,
 1135 and thus at least $k^2 - k$ moves altogether, are required to unnest every pair. \square

1136 **Theorem 4.3.** *Transforming a k -curve with n vertices in the plane into k nested (or unnested) circles requires*
 1137 *$\Omega(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$ homotopy moves in the worst case.*

1138 **Corollary 4.1.** *Transforming one k -curve with at most n vertices into another k -curve with at most n vertices*
 1139 *requires $\Omega(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$ homotopy moves in the worst case.*

1140 Although our lower bound examples consist of disjoint curves, all of these lower bounds apply without
 1141 modification to *connected* multicurves, because any k -curve can be connected with at most $k - 1$ $0 \rightarrow 2$ moves.
 1142 On the other hand, any connected k -curve has at least $2k - 2$ vertices, so the $\Omega(k^2)$ terms in Theorem 4.3 and
 1143 Corollary 4.1 are redundant.

1144 4.2 Quadratic Bound for Curves on Surfaces

1145 In this section we consider the natural generalization of the defect invariant to closed curves on orientable surfaces
 1146 of higher genus. Because these surfaces have non-trivial topology, not every closed curve is homotopic to a single
 1147 point or even to a simple curve.

1148 Although defect was originally defined as an invariant of *plane* curves, Polyak's formula

$$1149 \text{defect}(\gamma) = -2 \sum_{x \not\sim y} \text{sgn}(x) \text{sgn}(y)$$

1150 extends naturally to closed curves on any orientable surface; homotopy moves change the invariant exactly as
 1151 described in Figure 4.1. Thus, Lemma 4.1 immediately generalizes to any orientable surface as follows.

1152 **Lemma 4.4.** *Let γ and γ' be arbitrary closed curves that are homotopic on an arbitrary orientable surface.*
 1153 *Transforming γ into γ' requires at least $|\text{defect}(\gamma) - \text{defect}(\gamma')|/2$ homotopy moves.*

1154 In contrast to Theorem 3.1, the following construction gives toroidal curves with quadratic defect, implying a
 1155 quadratic lower bound for tightening non-contractible curves on orientable surfaces with positive genus.

1156 **Lemma 4.5.** *For any positive integer n , there is a closed curve on the torus with n vertices and defect $\Omega(n^2)$ that*
 1157 *is homotopic to a simple closed curve but not contractible.*

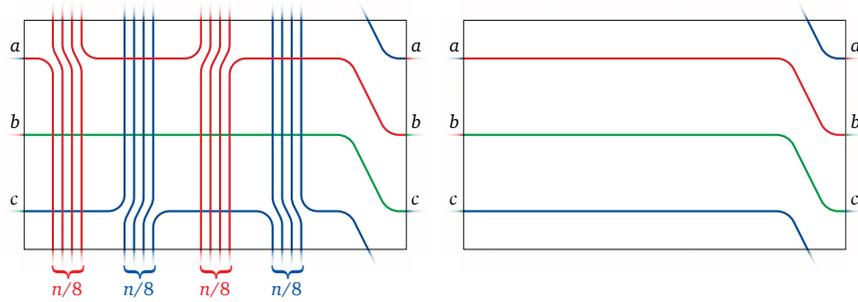


Figure 4.4. A curve γ on the torus with defect $\Omega(n^2)$ and a simple curve homotopic to γ .

1158 **Proof:** Without loss of generality, suppose n is a multiple of 8. The curve γ is illustrated on the left in Figure 4.4.
 1159 The torus is represented by a rectangle with opposite edges identified. We label three points a , b , and c on the
 1160 vertical edge of the rectangle and decompose the curve into a simple red path from a to b , a simple green path
 1161 from b to c , and a simple blue path from c to a . The red and blue paths each wind vertically around the torus,
 1162 first $n/8$ times in one direction, and then $n/8$ times in the opposite direction.

1163 As in previous proofs, we compute the defect of γ by describing a sequence of homotopy moves that tightens
 1164 the curve, while carefully tracking the changes in the defect that these moves incur. We can unwind one turn of
 1165 the red path by performing one $2 \rightarrow 0$ move, followed by $n/8$ $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves, followed by one $2 \rightarrow 0$ move, as illustrated
 1166 in Figure 4.5. Repeating this sequence of homotopy moves $n/8$ times removes all intersections between the red
 1167 and green paths, after which a sequence of $n/4$ $2 \rightarrow 0$ moves straightens the blue path, yielding the simple curve
 1168 shown on the right in Figure 4.4. Altogether, we perform $n^2/64 + n/2$ homotopy moves, where each $3 \rightarrow 3$ move
 1169 increases the defect of the curve by 2 and each $2 \rightarrow 0$ move decreases the defect of the curve by 2. We conclude
 1170 that $\text{defect}(\gamma) = -n^2/32 + n$. \square

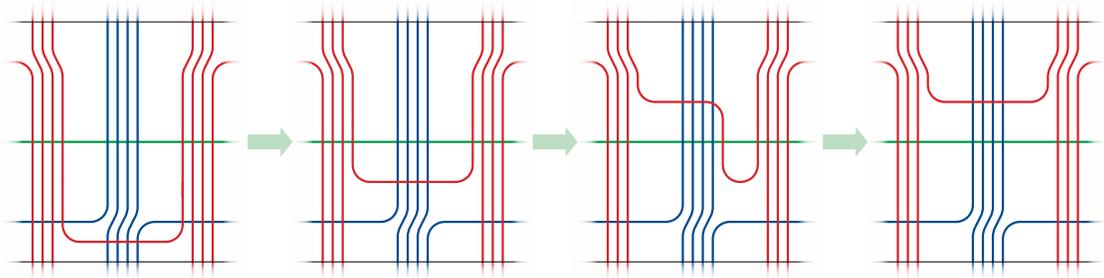


Figure 4.5. Unwinding one turn of the red path.

1171 **Theorem 4.4.** Tightening a closed curve with n crossings on a torus requires $\Omega(n^2)$ homotopy moves in the worst
 1172 case, even if the curve is homotopic to a simple curve.

1173 Later in Section 4.3.2, we will describe a sequence of *contractible* closed curves on the annulus that requires
 1174 $\Omega(n^2)$ homotopy moves to tighten through a different kind of curve invariant. Such curves must have defect
 1175 $O(n^{3/2})$ by Theorem 3.1.

4.3 Quadratic Bound for Contractible Curves on Surfaces

We now prove a quadratic lower bound on the worst-case number of homotopy moves required to tighten closed curves in the annulus; we extend this lower bound to more complex surfaces in Section 4.3.3. Rather than considering the standard annulus $S^1 \times [0, 1]$, it will be more convenient to work in the punctured plane $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{o\}$, which is homeomorphic to the open annulus $S^1 \times (0, 1)$; here o is an arbitrary point, which we call the **origin**.

For any homotopy in the punctured plane, homotopy moves across the face containing o are forbidden. This makes the quadratic lower bound possible; without this restriction, any planar curve can be simplified using at most $O(n^{3/2})$ moves, as we will see in Section 5.1.

4.3.1 Traces and Types

To simplify the presentation, we identify the vertices before and after a $3 \rightarrow 3$ move as indicated in Figure 1.1. Each $3 \rightarrow 3$ move involves three subpaths of γ , which intersect in three vertices; intuitively, each of these vertices moves continuously across the opposite subpath. Thus, in any homotopy from one curve γ to another curve γ' , each vertex of the evolving curve either starts as a vertex of γ or is created by a $0 \rightarrow 1$ or $0 \rightarrow 2$ move, moves continuously through a finite sequence of $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves, and either ends as a vertex of γ' or is destroyed by a $1 \rightarrow 0$ or $2 \rightarrow 0$ move.

Let H be a homotopy that transforms γ into γ' , represented as a finite sequence of homotopy moves. We define a graph $\text{Trace}(H)$, called the **trace** of H , whose nodes are the vertices of γ , the vertices of γ' , and the $1 \leftrightarrow 0$ and $2 \leftrightarrow 0$ moves in H ; each edge of $\text{Trace}(H)$ corresponds to the lifetime of a single vertex of the evolving curve. Every node of $\text{Trace}(H)$ has degree 1 or 2; thus, $\text{Trace}(H)$ is the disjoint union of paths and cycles.

Recall that curves γ_x^+ and γ_x^- are obtained from smoothing the curve γ at vertex x in a way that breaks γ into two closed curves, each respecting the orientation of the original. (See Figure 2.3.) We define the **type** of any vertex x of any annular curve γ as the winding number of the simpler curve γ_x^+ around the origin o (not around the vertex x); that is, we define $\text{type}(\gamma, x) := \text{wind}(\gamma_x^+, o)$. Vertex x is **irrelevant** if either $\text{type}(\gamma, x) = 0$ or $\text{type}(\gamma, x) = \text{wind}(\gamma, o)$ and **relevant** otherwise. Two vertices x and y have **complementary** types if $\text{type}(\gamma, x) + \text{type}(\gamma, y) = \text{wind}(\gamma, o)$, or equivalently, if $\text{wind}(\gamma_x^+, o) = \text{wind}(\gamma_y^-, o)$. If two vertices have complementary types, then either both are relevant or both are irrelevant.

Lemma 4.6. *The following hold for any annular curve:*

- (1) *Each $1 \leftrightarrow 0$ move creates or destroys an irrelevant vertex.*
- (2) *Each $2 \leftrightarrow 0$ move creates or destroys two vertices with complementary types and identical winding numbers.*
- (3) *Each $3 \leftrightarrow 3$ move changes the winding numbers of three vertices, each by exactly 1.*
- (4) *Except as stated in (1), (2), and (3), homotopy moves do not change the type or winding number of any vertex.*

Proof: Claim (1) is immediate. Up to symmetry, there are only two cases to consider to prove claim (2): The two sides of the empty bigon are oriented in the same direction or in opposite directions. In both cases, γ_x^+ and γ_y^- are homotopic and $\text{wind}(\gamma, x) = \text{wind}(\gamma, y)$, where x and y are the vertices of the bigon. See Figure 4.6. Claim (3) follows immediately from the observation that each vertex involved in a $3 \rightarrow 3$ move passes over the curve exactly once. Finally, claim (4) follows from the fact that winding number is a homotopy invariant; specifically, if there is a homotopy between two planar curves γ and γ' whose image does not include a point p , then $\text{wind}(\gamma, p) = \text{wind}(\gamma', p)$ [142]. \square

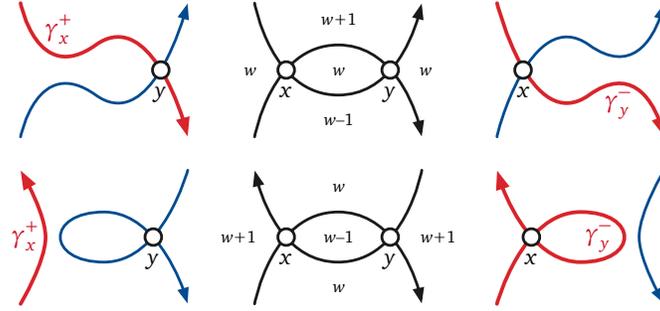


Figure 4.6. The vertices of empty bigons have complementary types and identical winding numbers.

1214 Lemma 4.6 implies that no homotopy move transforms a relevant vertex into an irrelevant vertex or vice versa,
 1215 and that relevant vertices are neither created by $0 \rightarrow 1$ moves nor destroyed by $1 \rightarrow 0$ moves. Let $\text{Trace}_*(H)$ denote
 1216 the subgraph of edges in the trace graph $\text{Trace}(H)$ that correspond to relevant vertices of the evolving curve.
 1217 Again, $\text{Trace}_*(H)$ is the disjoint union of paths and cycles. Each path in $\text{Trace}_*(H)$ connects either two vertices
 1218 of γ with complementary types, two vertices of γ' with complementary types, or a vertex of γ and a vertex of γ'
 1219 with identical types. Intuitively, each path in $\text{Trace}_*(H)$ is the record of a single relevant vertex alternately moving
 1220 forward and backward in time, reversing directions and types at every $0 \leftrightarrow 2$ move. We say that the nodes at the
 1221 end of each path in $\text{Trace}_*(H)$ are **paired** by the homotopy H . We emphasize that different homotopies may lead
 1222 to different pairings.

1223 Between $2 \leftrightarrow 0$ moves, a relevant vertex can participate in any finite number of $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves. By Lemma 4.6(3),
 1224 each $3 \rightarrow 3$ move changes the winding numbers of each of the three moving vertices by 1, and Lemma 4.6(4) implies
 1225 that the winding number of a vertex changes only when it participates in a $3 \rightarrow 3$ move. Thus, the homotopy H
 1226 must contain at least

$$1227 \quad \frac{1}{3} \sum_{x \sim y} |wind(x) - wind(y)|$$

1228 $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves, where the sum is over all pairs of paired vertices of $\text{Trace}_*(H)$, and the winding number of each vertex
 1229 is defined with respect to the curve (γ or γ') that contains it.

1230 4.3.2 A Bad Contractible Annular Curve

1231 **Theorem 4.5.** *For any positive integer n , there is a contractible annular curve with n vertices that requires $\Omega(n^2)$*
 1232 *homotopy moves to tighten.*

1233 **Proof:** For any pair of relatively prime integers p and q , the *flat torus knot* $T(p, q)$ described in Section 3.1.1 has
 1234 exactly $(|p| - 1) \cdot |q|$ vertices and winding number p around the origin. For any odd integer p , let Π_p denote the
 1235 closed curve obtained by placing a scaled copy of $T(-p, 1)$ inside the innermost face of $T(p, 2)$ and attaching
 1236 the two curves as shown in Figure 4.7. For purposes of illustration, we perform homotopy to move all crossings
 1237 into a narrow horizontal rectangle to the right of the origin, which is also where we join the two curves. The
 1238 resulting curve Π_p has winding number zero around the origin and thus is contractible, and it has $3(p - 1)$ vertices.
 1239 Within the rectangle (treated as a *tangle*), the curve consists of $2p$ simple strands; the endpoints of the strands are
 1240 connected by disjoint parallel paths outside the rectangle. In the left half of the rectangle, strands are directed
 1241 downward; in the right half, strands are directed upward. All but two strands connect the top and bottom of the
 1242 rectangle; the only exceptions are the strands that connect the two flat torus knots.

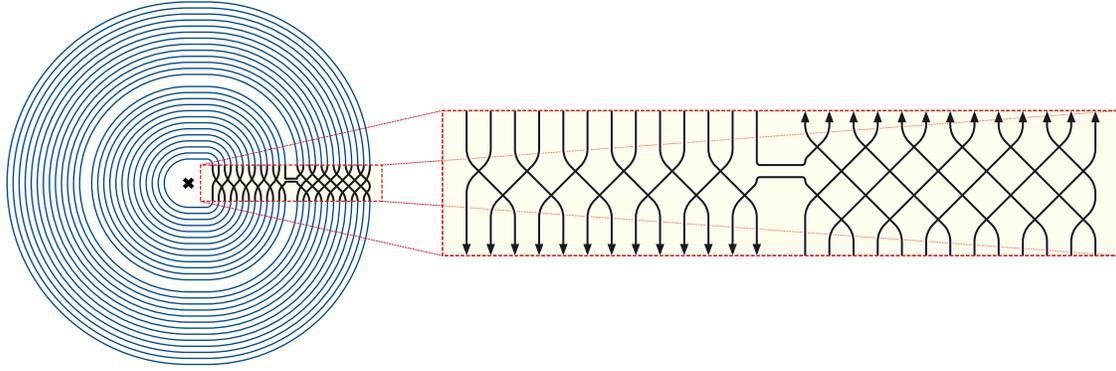


Figure 4.7. Our bad example curve Π_{13} in the punctured plane.

1243 We catalog the vertices of Π_p as follows; see Figure 4.8. In the left half of the rectangle, Π_p has one vertex a_i
 1244 with type i and winding number i , for each integer i from 1 to p . In the right half, Π_p has four vertices for each
 1245 index i between 1 and $(p-1)/2$:

- 1246 • two vertices x_i and x'_i with type $-i$ and winding number $2i$;
- 1247 • one vertex y_i with type i and winding number $p-2i$; and
- 1248 • one vertex z_i with type $i-p$ and winding number $p-2i$.

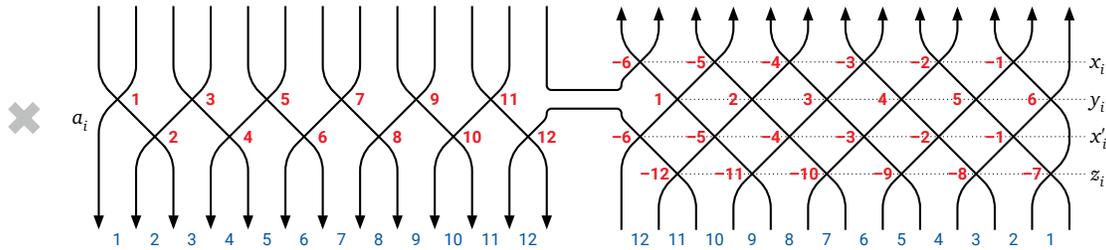


Figure 4.8. Vertices of Π_{13} annotated by type (bold red numbers next to each vertex) and winding number (thin blue numbers directly below each vertex).

1249 Every homotopy from Π_p to a simple closed curve defines an essentially unique pairing of the vertices of Π_p ;
 1250 without loss of generality, a_i is paired with x'_i , a_{p-i} is paired with z_i , and x_i is paired with y_i , for each integer i
 1251 between 1 and $(p-1)/2$. Thus, the number of $3 \rightarrow 3$ moves in any homotopy that contracts Π_p is at least

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{1}{3} \sum_{i=1}^{(p-1)/2} (|i-2i| + |(p-i) - (p-2i)| + |2i - (p-2i)|) \\
 &= \frac{1}{3} \sum_{i=1}^{(p-1)/2} (2i + |4i - p|) = \frac{1}{3} \left(\sum_{i=1}^{(p-1)/2} 2i + \sum_{j=1}^{(p-1)/2} (2j+1) \right) = \frac{p(p-1)}{6}.
 \end{aligned}$$

1256 This completes the proof. □

1257 4.3.3 More Complicated Surfaces

1258 We extend Theorem 4.5 to surfaces with more complex topology as follows. A closed curve in any surface Σ is
 1259 **two-sided** if it has a neighborhood homeomorphic to the annulus. Let Σ be a compact surface, possibly with

1260 boundary or non-orientable, that contains a simple two-sided non-contractible cycle α ; the only compact surfaces
 1261 that do *not* contain such a cycle are the sphere, the disk, and the projective plane. To create a bad example curve
 1262 for Σ , we simply embed our previous annular curve Π_p in an annular neighborhood A of α . The resulting curves
 1263 are still contractible in Σ and, as we will shortly prove, still require $\Omega(n^2)$ homotopy moves to simplify.

1264 However, winding numbers are not well-defined in surfaces of higher genus, so we need a more careful
 1265 argument to prove the quadratic lower bound. Instead of reasoning directly about homotopy moves on Σ , we lift
 1266 everything to a certain covering space of Σ previously considered by several authors [64, 87, 135, 161, 217].

1267 **Theorem 4.6.** *Let Σ be a compact connected surface, possibly with boundary or non-orientable (but not the*
 1268 *sphere, the disk, or the projective plane). For any positive integer n , there is a contractible curve with n vertices*
 1269 *in Σ that requires $\Omega(n^2)$ homotopy moves to simplify.*

1270 **Proof:** Let α be a simple two-sided non-contractible closed curve in Σ , that is, a non-contractible curve that lies in
 1271 an open neighborhood A homeomorphic to the open annulus $S^1 \times (0, 1)$. Every compact connected surface (other
 1272 than the sphere, the disk, or the projective plane) contains such a curve.

1273 The **cyclic covering space** $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$ of Σ with respect to α is the quotient of the universal covering space of Σ by the
 1274 infinite-cyclic subgroup of the fundamental group $\pi_1(\Sigma)$ generated by α . Let $\pi: \hat{\Sigma}_\alpha \rightarrow \Sigma$ be the corresponding
 1275 covering map. Standard covering space results imply that α has a unique lift $\hat{\alpha}$ to $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$ that is a simple closed curve.
 1276 Also, $\hat{\alpha}$ has an open annular neighborhood \hat{A} with non-contractible boundary components in $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$. Moreover, we may
 1277 assume that the restriction of the covering map π to \hat{A} is a homeomorphism to A .

1278 Let $\hat{\gamma}$ be an arbitrary contractible curve in \hat{A} , and let γ be the projection of $\hat{\gamma}$ to A . The two curves γ and $\hat{\gamma}$ have
 1279 the same number of vertices and edges. By homotopy lifting property, any homotopy $H: S^1 \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$ from γ
 1280 to a point lifts to a homotopy $\hat{H}: S^1 \times [0, 1] \rightarrow \hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$ from $\hat{\gamma}$ to a point. Each homotopy move in \hat{H} projects to a
 1281 homotopy move in H , but H may include additional homotopy moves, where the strands involved are projected
 1282 from different parts of the covering space. It follows that simplifying γ in Σ requires at least as many homotopy
 1283 moves as simplifying $\hat{\gamma}$ in $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$.

1284 Standard covering space results imply that the interior of $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$ is homeomorphic to an open annulus, and
 1285 therefore to the punctured plane $\mathbb{R}^2 \setminus \{0\}$. (See, for example, Schrijver [217, Proposition 2].) The lower bound
 1286 now follows directly from Theorem 4.5, by setting $\hat{\gamma} := \Pi_p$ for some $p = \Theta(n)$, as defined in Section 4.3.2. If Σ
 1287 has non-empty boundary, then $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$ also has non-empty boundary, but without loss of generality, any homotopy that
 1288 contracts $\hat{\gamma}$ avoids the boundary of $\hat{\Sigma}_\alpha$. □

1289 Theorem 4.6 strengthens the $\Omega(n^2)$ lower bound in Section 4.2 for tightening non-contractible curves in
 1290 orientable surfaces. Results of Hass and Scott [135, Theorem 2.7] imply that our lower bound is tight for the
 1291 Möbius band, the Klein bottle, and any orientable surface except the sphere or the disk; any contractible curve on
 1292 these surfaces can be simplified using at most $O(n^2)$ homotopy moves.

1293 The only missing case is the projective plane; see Section 8.2 for a discussion.

Chapter 5

Tightening Planar Curves

I used to love to untangle chains when I was a child. I had thin, busy fingers, and I never gave up. Perhaps there was a psychiatric component to my concentration but like much of my psychic damage, this worked to everyone's advantage.

— Anne Lamott, *Plan B: Further Thoughts on Faith*

We develop a new algorithm to simplify any closed curve in the plane in $O(n^{3/2})$ homotopy moves in Section 5.1. First we describe an algorithm that uses $O(D\Sigma)$ moves, where $D\Sigma$ is the sum of the face depths of the input curve. At a high level, our algorithm can be viewed as a variant of Steinitz's algorithm that empties and removes *monogons* instead of bigons. We then extend our algorithm to *tangles*: collections of boundary-to-boundary paths in a closed disk. Our algorithm tightens a tangle in $O(D\Sigma + ns)$ moves, where $D\Sigma$ is the sum of the depths of the tangle's faces, s is the number of strands, and n is the number of intersection points. Using the result from Section 3.2.3, we can find a simple closed curve whose interior tangle has m vertices, at most \sqrt{m} strands, and maximum face depth $O(\sqrt{n})$. Tightening this tangle and then recursively simplifying the resulting curve requires a total of $O(n^{3/2})$ moves. We show that this simplifying sequence of homotopy moves can be computed in $O(1)$ amortized time per move, assuming the curve is presented in an appropriate graph data structure. We conclude this chapter by proving that any arrangement of k closed curves can be simplified in $O(n^{3/2} + nk)$ homotopy moves, or in $O(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$ homotopy moves if the target configuration is specified in advance, precisely matching our lower bounds for all values of n and k .

5.1 Planar Curves

5.1.1 Contracting Simple Loops

Lemma 5.1. *Every closed curve γ in the plane can be simplified using at most $3D\Sigma(\gamma) - 3$ homotopy moves.*

Proof: We prove the statement by induction on the number of vertices in γ . The lemma is trivial if γ is already simple, so assume otherwise. Let $x := \gamma(\theta) = \gamma(\theta')$ be the first vertex to be visited twice by γ after the (arbitrarily chosen) basepoint $\gamma(0)$. Let α denote the subpath of γ from $\gamma(\theta)$ to $\gamma(\theta')$; our choice of x implies that α is a simple monogon. Let m and s denote the number of vertices and strands in the interior tangle of α , respectively.

Finally, let γ' denote the closed curve obtained from γ by removing α . The first stage of our algorithm transforms γ into γ' by contracting the monogon α via homotopy moves.

We remove the vertices and edges from the interior of α one at a time as follows; see Figure 5.2. If we can perform a $2 \rightarrow 0$ move to remove one edge of γ from the interior of α and decrease s , we do so. Otherwise, either α is empty, or some vertex of γ lies inside α . In the latter case, at least one vertex x inside α has a neighbor that lies on α . We move x outside α with a $0 \rightarrow 2$ move (which increases s by 1) followed by a $3 \rightarrow 3$ move (which decreases m by 1). Once α is an empty monogon, we remove it with a single $1 \rightarrow 0$ move. Altogether, our algorithm

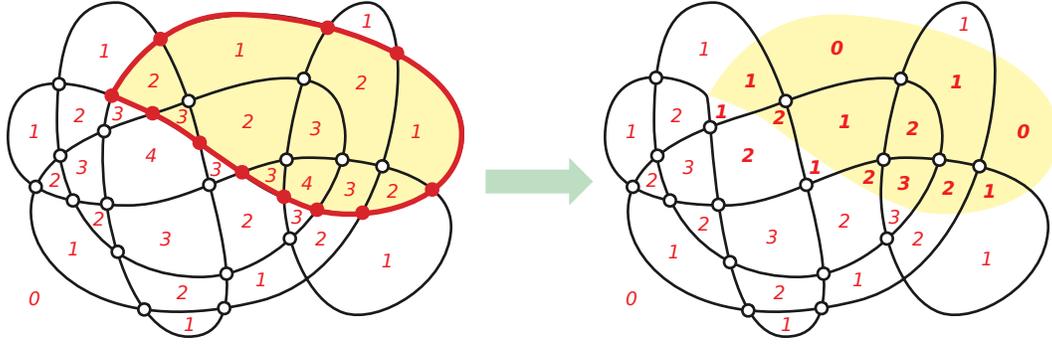


Figure 5.1. Transforming γ into γ' by contracting a simple monogon. Numbers are face depths.

1322 transforms γ into γ' using at most $3m + s + 1$ homotopy moves. Let M denote the actual number of homotopy
 1323 moves used.

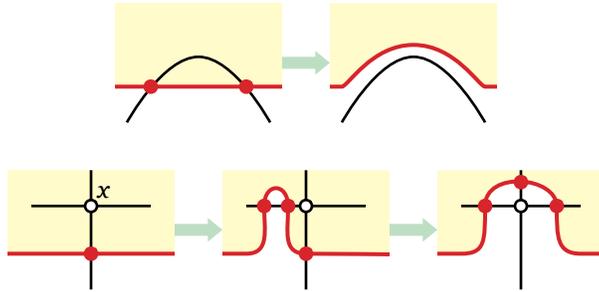


Figure 5.2. Moving a monogon over an interior empty bigon or an interior vertex.

1324 Euler's formula implies that α contains exactly $m + s + 1$ faces of γ . The Jordan curve theorem implies that
 1325 $depth(p, \gamma') \leq depth(p, \gamma) - 1$ for any point p inside α , and trivially $depth(p, \gamma') \leq depth(p, \gamma)$ for any point p
 1326 outside α . It follows that $D\Sigma(\gamma') \leq D\Sigma(\gamma) - (m + s + 1) \leq D\Sigma(\gamma) - M/3$, and therefore $M \leq 3D\Sigma(\gamma) - 3D\Sigma(\gamma')$.
 1327 The induction hypothesis implies that we can recursively simplify γ' using at most $3D\Sigma(\gamma') - 3$ moves. The lemma
 1328 now follows immediately. \square

1329 Our upper bound is a factor of 3 larger than Feo and Provan's [100]; however our algorithm has the advantage
 1330 that it extends to *tangles*, as described in the next subsection.

1331 5.1.2 Tangles

1332 Recall that a tangle is *tight* if every pair of strands intersects at most once and *loose* otherwise. Every loose tangle
 1333 contains either an empty monogon or a (not necessarily empty) bigon. Thus, any tangle with n vertices can be
 1334 transformed into a tight tangle—or less formally, *tightened*—in $O(n^2)$ homotopy moves using Steinitz's algorithm.
 1335 On the other hand, there are infinite classes of loose tangles for which no homotopy move that decreases the
 1336 potential, so we cannot directly apply Feo and Provan's algorithm to this setting. (See Section 8.1.1).

1337 We describe a two-phase algorithm to tighten any tangle. First, we remove any self-intersections in the
 1338 individual strands, by contracting monogons as in the proof of Lemma 5.1. Once each strand is simple, we move
 1339 the strands so that each pair intersects at most once. See Figure 5.3.

1340 **Lemma 5.2.** *Every n -vertex tangle Θ with s simple strands can be tightened using at most $3ns$ homotopy moves.*

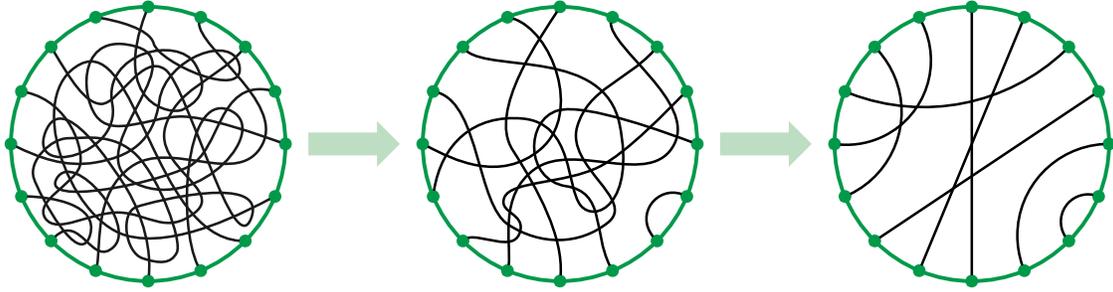


Figure 5.3. Tightening a tangle in two phases: First simplifying the individual strands, then removing excess crossings between pairs of strands.

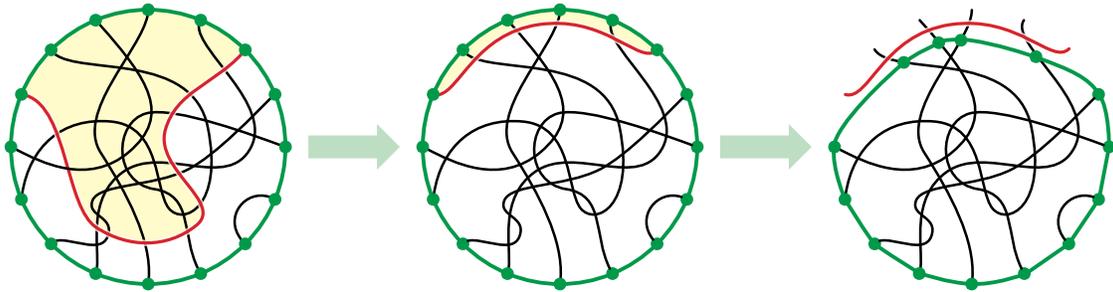


Figure 5.4. Moving one strand out of the way and shrinking the tangle boundary.

Proof: We prove the lemma by induction on s . The base case when $s = 1$ is trivial, so assume $s \geq 2$.

Fix an arbitrary reference point on the boundary circle σ that is not an endpoint of a strand. For each index i , let σ_i be the arc of σ between the endpoints of γ_i that does not contain the reference point. A strand γ_i is *extremal* if the corresponding arc σ_i does not contain any other arc σ_j .

Choose an arbitrary extremal strand γ_i . Let m_i denote the number of tangle vertices in the interior of the disk bounded by γ_i and the boundary arc σ_i ; call this disk Σ_i . Let s_i denote the number of intersections between γ_i and other strands. Finally, let γ'_i be a path inside the disk Σ defining tangle Θ , with the same endpoints as γ_i , that intersects each other strand in Θ at most once, such that the disk bounded by σ_i and γ'_i has no tangle vertices inside its interior. (See Figure 5.4 for an example; the red strand in the left tangle is γ_i , the red strand in the middle tangle is γ'_i , and the shaded disk is Σ_i .)

We can deform γ_i into γ'_i using essentially the algorithm from Lemma 5.1; the disk Σ_i is contracted along with γ_i in the process. If Σ_i contains an empty bigon with one side in γ_i , remove it with a $2 \rightarrow 0$ move (which decreases s_i by 1). If Σ_i has an interior vertex with a neighbor on γ_i , remove it using at most two homotopy moves (which increases s_i by 1 and decreases m_i by 1). Altogether, this deformation requires at most $3m_i + s_i \leq 3n$ homotopy moves.

After deforming γ_i to γ'_i , we redefine the tangle by shrinking its boundary curve slightly to exclude γ'_i , without creating or removing any vertices in the tangle or endpoints on the boundary; see the right of Figure 5.4. We emphasize that shrinking the boundary does not modify the strands and therefore does not require any homotopy moves. The resulting smaller tangle has exactly $s - 1$ strands, each of which is simple. Thus, the induction hypothesis implies that we can recursively tighten this smaller tangle using at most $3n(s - 1)$ homotopy moves. \square

Corollary 5.1. Every n -vertex s -strand tangle Θ can be tightened using at most $3D\Sigma(\Theta) + 3ns$ homotopy moves.

Proof: As long as Θ contains at least one non-simple strand, we identify a simple monogon α in that strand and

1363 remove it as described in the proof of Lemma 5.1. Suppose there are m vertices and t strands in the interior tangle
 1364 of α , and let M be the number of homotopy moves required to remove α . The algorithm in the proof of Lemma 5.1
 1365 implies that $M \leq 3m + t + 1$, and Euler's formula implies that α contains $m + t + 1 \geq M/3$ faces. Removing α
 1366 decreases the depth of each of these faces by at least 1 and therefore decreases the potential of the tangle by at
 1367 least $M/3$.

1368 Let Θ' be the remaining tangle after all such monogons are removed. Our potential analysis for a single monogon
 1369 implies inductively that transforming Θ into Θ' requires at most $3D\Sigma(\Theta) - 3D\Sigma(\Theta') \leq 3D\Sigma(\Theta)$ homotopy moves.
 1370 Because Θ' still has s strands and at most n vertices, Lemma 5.2 implies that we can tighten Θ' with at most $3ns$
 1371 additional homotopy moves. □

1372 5.1.3 Main Algorithm

1373 Our main algorithm repeatedly finds a useful closed curve using Lemma 3.10 whose interior tangle has depth $O(\sqrt{n})$,
 1374 and tightens its interior tangle; if there are no useful closed curves, then we fall back to the monogon-contraction
 1375 algorithm of Lemma 5.1.

1376 **Theorem 5.1.** *Every closed curve in the plane with n vertices can be simplified in $O(n^{3/2})$ homotopy moves.*

1377 **Proof:** Let γ be an arbitrary closed curve in the plane with n vertices. If γ has depth $O(\sqrt{n})$, Lemma 5.1 and
 1378 the trivial upper bound $D\Sigma(\gamma) \leq (n + 1) \cdot \text{depth}(\gamma)$ imply that we can simplify γ in $O(n^{3/2})$ homotopy moves. For
 1379 purposes of analysis, we charge $O(\sqrt{n})$ of these moves to each vertex of γ .

1380 Otherwise, let σ be an arbitrary useful closed curve chosen according to Lemma 3.10. Suppose the interior
 1381 tangle of σ has m vertices, s strands, and depth d . Lemma 3.10 implies that $d = O(\sqrt{n})$, and the definition of
 1382 useful implies that $s \leq \sqrt{m}$, which is $O(\sqrt{n})$. Thus, by Corollary 5.1, we can tighten the interior tangle of σ in
 1383 $O(md + ms) = O(m\sqrt{n})$ moves. This simplification removes at least $m - s^2/2 \geq \Omega(m)$ vertices from γ , as the
 1384 resulting tight tangle has at most $s^2/2$ vertices. Again, for purposes of analysis, we charge $O(\sqrt{n})$ moves to each
 1385 deleted vertex. We then recursively simplify the resulting closed curve.

1386 In either case, each vertex of γ is charged $O(\sqrt{n})$ moves as it is deleted. Thus, simplification requires at most
 1387 $O(n^{3/2})$ homotopy moves in total. □

1388 The bound in Theorem 5.1 is asymptotically optimal as it matches the lower bound in Theorem 4.1 up to
 1389 constant factors. As an immediate corollary of Theorem 5.1 and Theorem 7.2, we obtain an alternative proof to
 1390 the subquadratic defect upper bound in Section 3.2.

1391 5.1.4 Efficient Implementation

1392 Here we describe how to implement our curve-simplification algorithm to run in $O(n^{3/2})$ time; in fact, our
 1393 implementation spends only constant amortized time per homotopy move. We assume that the input curve
 1394 is given in a data structure that allows fast exploration and modification of plane graphs, such as a quad-
 1395 edge data structure [130] or a doubly-connected edge list [22]. If the curve is presented as a polygon with m
 1396 edges, an appropriate graph representation can be constructed in $O(m \log m + n)$ time using classical geometric
 1397 algorithms [55, 60, 180]; more recent algorithms can be used for piecewise-algebraic curves [83].

1398 **Theorem 5.2.** *Given a simple closed curve γ in the plane with n vertices, we can compute a sequence of $O(n^{3/2})$
 1399 homotopy moves that simplifies γ in amortized constant time per move.*

Proof: We begin by labeling each face of γ with its depth, using a breadth-first search of the dual graph in $O(n)$ time. Then we construct the depth contours of γ —the boundaries of the regions \tilde{R}_j from the proof of Lemma 3.10—and organize them into a *contour tree* in $O(n)$ time by brute force. Another $O(n)$ -time breadth-first traversal computes the number of strands and the number of interior vertices of every contour’s interior tangle; in particular, we identify which depth contours are useful. To complete the preprocessing phase, we place all the leafmost useful contours into a queue. We can charge the overall $O(n)$ preprocessing time to the $\Omega(n)$ homotopy moves needed to simplify the curve.

As long as the queue of leafmost useful contours is non-empty, we extract one contour σ from this queue and simplify its interior tangle Θ as follows. Suppose Θ has m interior vertices.

Following the proof of Theorem 5.1, we first simplify every monogon in each strand of Θ . We identify monogons by traversing the strand from one endpoint to the other, marking the vertices as we go; the first time we visit a vertex that has already been marked, we have found a monogon α . We can perform each of the homotopy moves required to shrink α in $O(1)$ time, because each such move modifies only a constant-radius boundary of a vertex on α . After the monogon is shrunk, we continue walking along the strand starting at the most recently marked vertex.

The second phase of the tangle-simplification algorithm proceeds similarly. We walk around the boundary of Θ , marking vertices as we go. As soon as we see the second endpoint of any strand γ_i , we pause the walk to straighten γ_i . As before, we can execute each homotopy move used to move γ_i to γ'_i in $O(1)$ time. We then move the boundary of the tangle over the vertices of γ'_i , and remove the endpoints of γ'_i from the boundary curve, in $O(1)$ time per vertex.

The only portions of the running time that we have not already charged to homotopy moves are the time spent marking the vertices on each strand and the time to update the tangle boundary after moving a strand aside. Altogether, the uncharged time is $O(m)$, which is less than the number of moves used to tighten Θ , because the contour σ is useful. Thus, tightening the interior tangle of a useful contour requires $O(1)$ amortized time per homotopy move.

Once the tangle is tight, we must update the queue of useful contours. The original contour σ is still a depth contour in the modified curve, and tightening Θ only changes the depths of faces that intersect Θ . Thus, we could update the contour tree in $O(m)$ time, which we could charge to the moves used to tighten Θ ; but in fact, this update is unnecessary, because no contour in the interior of σ is useful. We then walk up the contour tree from σ , updating the number of interior vertices until we find a useful ancestor contour. The total time spent traversing the contour tree for new useful contours is $O(n)$; we can charge this time to the $\Omega(n)$ moves needed to simplify the curve. \square

5.2 Planar Multicurves

Finally, we describe how to extend our $O(n^{3/2})$ upper bound to multicurves in the plane. Just as in Section 4.1.1, we distinguish between two variants, depending on whether the target of the simplification is an *arbitrary* set of disjoint cycles or a *particular* set of disjoint cycles. In both cases, our upper bounds match the lower bounds proved in Section 4.1.1.

First we extend our monogon-contraction algorithm from Lemma 5.1 to the multicurve setting. Recall that a *component* of a multicurve γ is any multicurve whose image is a component of the image of γ , and the individual closed curves that comprise γ are its *constituent curves*. The main difficulty is that one component of the multicurve

1440 might lie inside a face of another component, making progress on the larger component impossible. To handle
 1441 this potential obstacle, we simplify the *innermost* components of the multicurve first, and we move isolated simple
 1442 closed curves toward the outer face as quickly as possible. Figure 5.5 sketches the basic steps of our algorithm
 1443 when the input multicurve is connected.

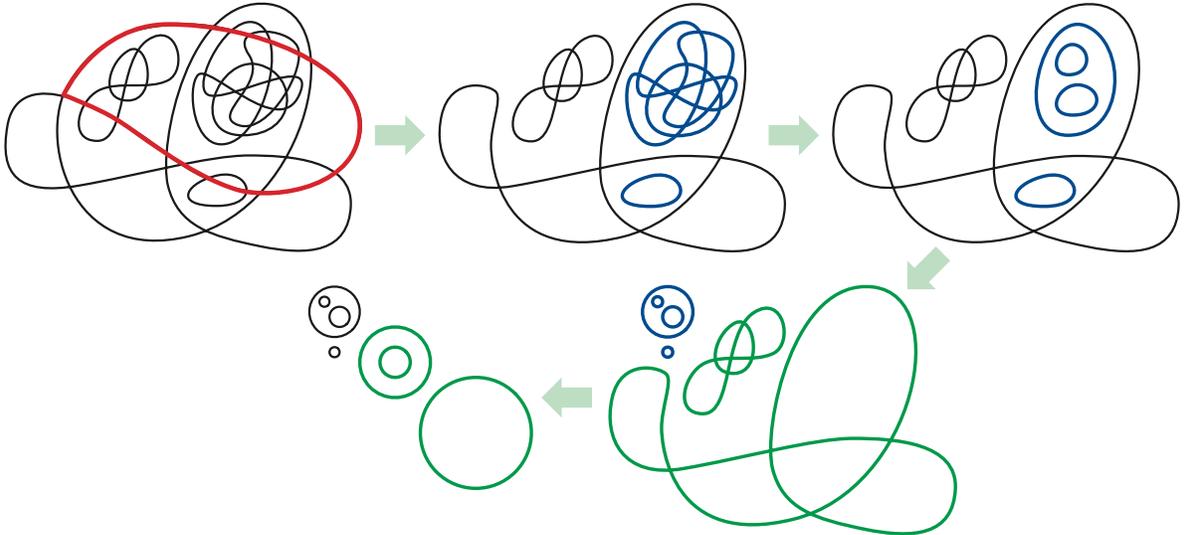


Figure 5.5. Simplifying a connected multicurve: shrink an arbitrary simple monogon or cycle, recursively simplify any inner components, translate inner circle clusters to the outer face, and recursively simplify the remaining non-simple components.

1444 **Lemma 5.3.** *Every n -vertex k -curve γ in the plane can be transformed into k disjoint simple closed curves using*
 1445 *at most $3D\Sigma(\gamma) + 4nk$ homotopy moves.*

1446 **Proof:** Let γ be an arbitrary k -curve with n vertices. If γ is connected, we either contract and delete a monogon,
 1447 exactly as in Lemma 5.1, or we contract a simple constituent curve to an isolated circle, using essentially the
 1448 same algorithm. In either case, the number of moves performed is at most $3D\Sigma(\gamma) - 3D\Sigma(\gamma')$, where γ' is the
 1449 multicurve after the contraction. The lemma now follows immediately by induction.

1450 We call a component of γ an **outer component** if it is incident to the unbounded outer face of γ , and an **inner**
 1451 **component** otherwise. If γ has more than one outer component, we partition γ into subpaths, each consisting
 1452 of one outer component γ_o and all inner components located inside faces of γ_o , and we recursively simplify
 1453 each subpath independently; the lemma follows by induction. If any outer component is simple, we ignore that
 1454 component and simplify the rest of γ recursively; again, the lemma follows by induction.

1455 Thus, we can assume without loss of generality that our multicurve γ is disconnected but has only one outer
 1456 component γ_o , which is non-simple. For each face f of γ_o , let γ_f denote the union of all components inside f .
 1457 Let n_f and k_f respectively denote the number of vertices and constituent curves of γ_f . Similarly, let n_o and k_o
 1458 respectively denote the number of vertices and constituent curves of the outer component γ_o .

1459 We first recursively simplify each subpath γ_f ; let κ_f denote the resulting *cluster* of k_f simple closed curves. By
 1460 the induction hypothesis, this simplification requires at most $3D\Sigma(\gamma_f) + 4n_f k_f$ homotopy moves. We *translate*
 1461 each cluster κ_f to the outer face of γ_o by shrinking κ_f to a small ε -ball and then moving the entire cluster along
 1462 a shortest path in the dual graph of γ_o . This translation requires at most $4n_o k_f$ homotopy moves; each circle
 1463 in κ_f uses one 2→0 move and one 0→2 move to cross any edge of γ_o , and in the worst case, the cluster might

1464 cross all $2n_o$ edges of γ_o . After all circle clusters are in the outer face, we recursively simplify γ_o using at most
 1465 $3D\Sigma(\gamma_o) + 4n_o k_o$ homotopy moves.

1466 The total number of homotopy moves used in this case is

$$1467 \sum_f 3D\Sigma(\gamma_f) + 3D\Sigma(\gamma_o) + \sum_f 4n_f k_f + \sum_f 4n_o k_f + 4n_o k_o.$$

1468 Each face of γ_o has the same depth as the corresponding face of γ , and for each face f of γ_o , each face of the
 1469 subpath γ_f has lesser depth than the corresponding face of γ . It follows that

$$1470 \sum_f D\Sigma(\gamma_f) + D\Sigma(\gamma_o) \leq D\Sigma(\gamma).$$

1471 Similarly, $\sum_f n_f + n_o = n$ and $\sum_f k_f + k_o = k$. The lemma now follows immediately. \square

1472 To reduce the leading term to $O(n^{3/2})$, we extend the definition of a tangle to the intersection of a multicurve γ
 1473 with a closed disk whose boundary intersects the multicurve transversely away from its vertices, or not at all. Such
 1474 a tangle can be decomposed into boundary-to-boundary paths, called **open** strands, and closed curves that do not
 1475 touch the tangle boundary, called **closed** strands. Each closed strand is a constituent curve of γ . A tangle is **tight** if
 1476 every strand is simple, every pair of open strands intersects at most once, and otherwise all strands are disjoint.

1477 **Theorem 5.3.** *Every k -curve in the plane with n vertices can be transformed into a set of k disjoint simple closed*
 1478 *curves using $O(n^{3/2} + nk)$ homotopy moves.*

1479 **Proof:** Let γ be an arbitrary k -curve with n vertices. Following the proof of Lemma 5.3, we can assume without
 1480 loss of generality that γ has a single outer component γ_o , which is non-simple.

1481 When γ is disconnected, we follow the strategy in the previous proof. Let γ_f denote the union of all components
 1482 inside any face f of γ_o . For each face f , we recursively simplify γ_f and translate the resulting cluster of disjoint
 1483 circles to the outer face; when all faces are empty, we recursively simplify γ_o . The theorem now follows by
 1484 induction.

1485 When γ is non-simple and connected, we follow the useful closed curve strategy from Theorem 5.1. We define
 1486 a closed curve σ to be useful for γ if the interior tangle of σ has its number of vertices at least the square of the
 1487 number of *open* strands; then the proof of Lemma 3.10 applies to connected multicurves with no modifications. So
 1488 let Θ be a tangle with m vertices, $s \leq \sqrt{m}$ open strands, ℓ closed strands, and depth $d = O(\sqrt{n})$. We straighten Θ
 1489 in two phases, almost exactly as in Section 5.1.2, contracting monogons and simple closed strands in the first
 1490 phase, and straightening open strands in the second phase.

1491 In the first phase, contracting one monogon or simple closed strand uses at most $3D\Sigma(\Theta) - 3D\Sigma(\Theta')$ homotopy
 1492 moves, where Θ' is the tangle after contraction. After each contraction, if Θ' is disconnected—in particular, if
 1493 we just contracted a simple closed strand—we simplify and extract any isolated components as follows. Let Θ'_o
 1494 denote the component of Θ' that includes the boundary cycle, and for each face f of Θ'_o , let γ_f denote the union
 1495 of all components of Θ' inside f . We simplify each multicurve γ_f using the algorithm from Lemma 5.3—*not*
 1496 *recursively!*—and then translate the resulting cluster of disjoint circles *to the outer face of γ* . See Figure 5.6.
 1497 Altogether, simplifying and translating these subpaths requires at most $3D\Sigma(\Theta') - 3D\Sigma(\Theta'') + 4n \sum_f k_f$ homotopy
 1498 moves, where Θ'' is the resulting tangle.

1499 The total number of moves performed in the first phase is at most $3D\Sigma(\Theta) + 4m\ell = O(m\sqrt{n} + n\ell)$. The
 1500 first phase ends when the tangle consists entirely of simple open strands. Thus, the second phase straightens

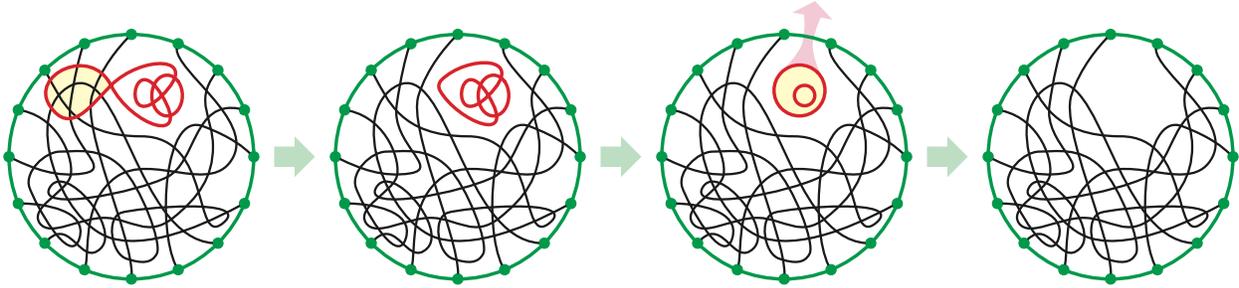


Figure 5.6. Whenever shrinking a monogon or simple closed strand disconnects the tangle, simplify each isolated component and translate the resulting cluster of circles to the outer face of the entire multicurve.

1501 the remaining open strands exactly as in the proof of Lemma 5.2; the total number of moves in this phase is
 1502 $O(ms) = O(m\sqrt{n})$. We charge $O(\sqrt{n})$ time to each deleted vertex and $O(n)$ time to each constituent curve that
 1503 was simplified and translated outward. We then recursively simplify the remaining multicurve, ignoring any outer
 1504 circle clusters.

1505 Altogether, each vertex of γ is charged $O(\sqrt{n})$ time as it is deleted, and each constituent curve of γ is charged
 1506 $O(n)$ time as it is translated outward. \square

1507 With $O(k^2)$ additional homotopy moves, we can transform the resulting set of k disjoint circles into k nested
 1508 or unnested circles.

1509 **Theorem 5.4.** *Any k -curve with n vertices in the plane can be transformed into k nested (or unnested) simple*
 1510 *closed curves using $O(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$ homotopy moves.*

1511 **Corollary 5.2.** *Any k -curve with at most n vertices in the plane can be transformed into any other k -curve with at*
 1512 *most n vertices using $O(n^{3/2} + nk + k^2)$ homotopy moves.*

1513 Theorems 4.2 and 4.3 and Corollary 4.1 imply that these upper bounds are tight in the worst case for all
 1514 possible values of n and k . As in the lower bounds, the $O(k^2)$ terms are redundant for connected multicurves.

1515 More careful analysis implies that any k -curve with n vertices and depth d can be simplified in $O(n \min\{d, n^{1/2}\} +$
 1516 $k \min\{d, n\})$ homotopy moves, or transformed into k unnested circles using $O(n \min\{d, n^{1/2}\} + k \min\{d, n\} +$
 1517 $k \min\{d, k\})$ homotopy moves. Moreover, these upper bounds are tight, up to constant factors, for all possible
 1518 values of n , k , and d . We leave the details of this extension as an exercise for the reader.

Chapter 6

Tightening Curves on Surfaces

Let bigons be bygones.

— Anna, *The Geometric Supposer: What is it a case of?*

1519

1520 In this chapter we prove that any n -vertex closed curve on an arbitrary orientable surface of negative Euler
1521 characteristic can be tightened in polynomially many homotopy moves. Throughout the chapter we assume the
1522 reader is familiar with fundamentals of combinatorial topology on surfaces. We refer the readers to Massey [176],
1523 Stillwell [232], and Giblin [112] for comprehensive introductions to the topic.

1524 Our main technical contribution is to extend Steinitz’s bigon removal algorithm to *singular bigons*—bigons that
1525 wrap around the surface and overlap themselves but nevertheless have well-defined disjoint bounding paths—
1526 whose existence is guaranteed by a theorem of Hass and Scott [135, Theorem 2.7]. (A formal definition of the
1527 singular bigon can be found in Section 6.1.) To work with singular bigons, it is conceptually easier to look at a lift
1528 of the bigon in the universal cover. Unlike the case when the bigon is embedded, moving the two bounding paths of
1529 the bigon now also moves all their *translates* in the universal cover, which potentially changes the structure inside
1530 the lifted bigon. We overcome this difficulty by carefully subdividing the homotopy into phases, each performed
1531 inside a subset of the universal cover that maps injectively onto the original surface.

1532 We provide two algorithms to remove singular bigons: one for orientable surface with boundary and one for
1533 those without. We consider surfaces with boundary first, not only because the bound obtained is stronger, but also
1534 because the proof is simpler and provides important intuition for the more difficult proof of the boundary-less case.
1535 The benefit of working on surface with boundary is that the fundamental group of such surface is *free*; intuitively
1536 one can always find a way to decrease the complexity of the bigon wrapping around the surface.

1537 Our proof for surface without boundary uses a discrete analog of the classical *isoperimetric inequality* in the
1538 hyperbolic plane to bound the number of vertices inside the lifted bigon (area) in terms of the number of vertices
1539 on its boundary (perimeter). To make the presentation self-contained, we provide an elementary proof of this
1540 inequality using the combinatorial Gauss-Bonnet theorem [18, 93, 173, 188]. The second algorithm is surprisingly
1541 complex and subtle, with multiple components and tools drawn from discrete and computational topology.

6.1 Singular Bigons and Singular Monogons

1543 Here we generalize the Steinitz’s bigon removal algorithm to any closed curves on arbitrary orientable surfaces.
1544 Following Hass and Scott [135], a *singular bigon* in γ consists of two subpaths of γ that are disjoint in the domain,
1545 and the two subpaths are homotopic to each other in Σ . Similarly, a *singular monogon* is a subpath of γ whose
1546 two endpoints are identical in Σ , and that forms a null-homotopic closed curve in Σ .

1547 Our algorithms rely on the following simple property of singular monogons and bigons, which follows
1548 immediately from their definition.

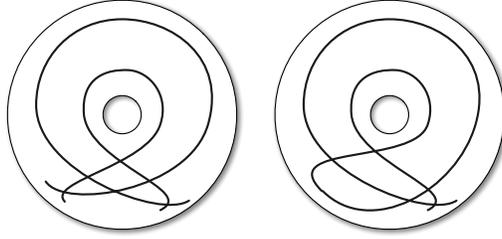


Figure 6.1. A basic singular bigon and a basic singular monogon in the annulus.

1549 **Lemma 6.1.** *The bounding paths of any singular monogon or bigon in γ cross γ at most $2n$ times.*

1550 **Proof:** Any point traversing the entire curve γ passes through each of the n self-intersection points twice, and the
 1551 bounding paths of a singular bigon are disjoint in the domain by definition. \square

1552 An important subtlety of Hass and Scott’s definition is that a lift of a singular bigon to the universal cover is
 1553 not necessarily an *embedded* bigon. First, the lifted boundary paths of the bigon need not be simple or disjoint.
 1554 More subtly, the endpoints of the lifted bigon might not enclose single corners: an embedded bigon looks like a
 1555 lens \wp , but a lift of a singular bigon might resemble a heart \heartsuit or a butt \complement . Similarly, a lift of a singular monogon
 1556 is not necessarily an *embedded* monogon; the lifted subpath might self-intersect way from its endpoint, and it may
 1557 not enclose a single corner at its endpoint.

1558 We define a singular monogon or singular bigon to be *basic* if any of its lifts on the universal cover is an
 1559 *embedded* monogon or bigon, respectively. Hass and Scott proved that any closed curve with excess intersections
 1560 on an arbitrary orientable surface, with or without boundary, must contain a singular monogon or a singular
 1561 bigon [135, Theorem 4.2]. However, a close reading of their proof reveals that the singular monogon or singular
 1562 bigon they find is in fact basic. We thus restate their result without repeating the proof.

1563 **Lemma 6.2 (Hass and Scott [135]).** *Let γ be a closed curve on an arbitrary orientable surface. If γ has excess
 1564 intersections, then there is a basic singular monogon or a basic singular bigon in γ .*

1565 In their paper Hass and Scott also demonstrated a multicurve with excess intersections that *does not* contain
 1566 any singular monogons or bigons. Therefore our algorithms do not generalize to multicurves directly. In fact, such
 1567 question is still open.

1568 **Conjecture 6.1.** *Any multicurve on an arbitrary orientable surface can be tightened using polynomially many
 1569 homotopy moves.*

1570 6.2 Surfaces with Boundary

1571 In this section, we consider the case of surfaces with boundary.

1572 **Theorem 6.1.** *On an oriented surface of genus g with $b > 0$ boundary components, a closed curve with n
 1573 self-intersections can be tightened using at most $O((g + b)n^3)$ homotopy moves.*

1574 Later in Section 6.3 we will describe a similar algorithm for closed curves on an arbitrary orientable surface
 1575 without boundary. The reader is encouraged to follow the order of the presentation and get an intuitive sense of
 1576 how the bigon removal algorithm operates in this simpler setting.

1577 Removing singular bigons, as guaranteed by Lemma 6.2, is the foundation of our upper bound proofs. Given
 1578 a curve γ with n vertices that is not already tightened, we decrease the number of vertices of γ as follows. If γ
 1579 contains an *embedded* monogon or bigon, we delete it following Steinitz’s algorithm (Lemma 2.2), using $O(n)$
 1580 homotopy moves. Otherwise, if γ contains a basic singular bigon, we attempt to remove it, essentially by swapping
 1581 the two bounding curves; however, if at any point γ has only $n - 2$ vertices, we immediately abort the bigon
 1582 removal and recurse. Finally, if γ contains no basic singular bigons, Lemma 6.2 implies that γ must contain a
 1583 basic singular monogon; we perform a single $0 \rightarrow 1$ move to transform it into a basic singular bigon (as shown in
 1584 Figure 6.2) and then defer to the previous case.

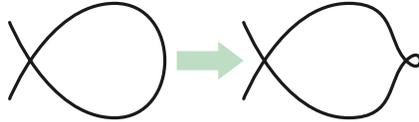


Figure 6.2. A single $0 \rightarrow 1$ move transforms a basic singular monogon into a basic singular bigon.

1585 The curve γ is tightened after repeating the previous reduction process at most n times. Thus, Theorem 6.1
 1586 follows immediately from the following lemma, which we prove in the remainder of this section.

1587 **Lemma 6.3.** *Let Σ be an orientable surface of genus g with $b > 0$ boundary components, and let γ be a closed*
 1588 *curve in Σ with n vertices that contains a basic singular bigon, but no embedded monogons or bigons. The number*
 1589 *of vertices of γ can be decreased by 2 using $O((g + b)n^2)$ homotopy moves.*

1590 6.2.1 Removing a Basic Singular Bigon

1591 Fix a surface Σ and a closed curve γ with n vertices, satisfying the conditions of Lemma 6.3. A **system of arcs** Δ
 1592 on the surface Σ is a collection of simple disjoint boundary-to-boundary paths that cuts the surface Σ open into
 1593 one single polygon. Euler’s formula implies that every system of arcs contains exactly $2g + b - 1$ arcs. Cutting
 1594 the surface along these arcs leaves a topological disk P whose boundary alternates between arcs (each arc in Δ
 1595 appears twice) and subpaths of the boundary. We refer to P as the **fundamental polygon** of Σ with respect to Δ .

1596 For any closed curve γ on any orientable surface Σ with boundary, there is a system of arcs Δ satisfying
 1597 the following **crossing property**: Each arc in Δ intersects each edge of γ at most twice, and only transversely.
 1598 (For examples of such a construction, see Colin de Verdière and Erickson [64, Section 6.1] or Erickson and
 1599 Nayyeri [92, Section 3].) The fundamental polygon induces a tiling of the universal cover of Σ ; we call each lift of
 1600 the fundamental polygon a **tile**.

1601 Any basic singular bigon β of γ in Σ lifts to a bigon $\hat{\beta}$ in the universal cover of Σ , with two bounding subpaths
 1602 λ and ρ that are disjoint in the domain of γ except possibly at their endpoints. Since $\hat{\beta}$ bounds a disk in the
 1603 universal cover, any lift of any arc of Δ intersects $\hat{\beta}$ an even number of times. The intersection of a tile with $\hat{\beta}$ may
 1604 have several components; we call each component a **block**. A block is **transverse** if it is adjacent to both λ and ρ ,
 1605 and **extremal** otherwise. The **transverse** blocks have a natural linear ordering B_1, \dots, B_k along either λ or ρ .

1606 Our process for removing the bigon $\hat{\beta}$ has three stages: (1) Sweep inward over the extremal blocks, (2) sweep
 1607 across the sequence of transverse blocks, and finally (3) remove one small empty bigon at a corner of $\hat{\beta}$. The first
 1608 two stages are illustrated in Figure 6.3. This homotopy projects to a homotopy on Σ . We will prove that at the end
 1609 of this bigon removal process, γ has exactly $n - 2$ vertices.

1610 To simplify our algorithm, we actually abort the bigon-removal process immediately as soon as γ has $n - 2$
 1611 vertices; however, for purposes of analysis, we conservatively assume that the removal process runs to completion.

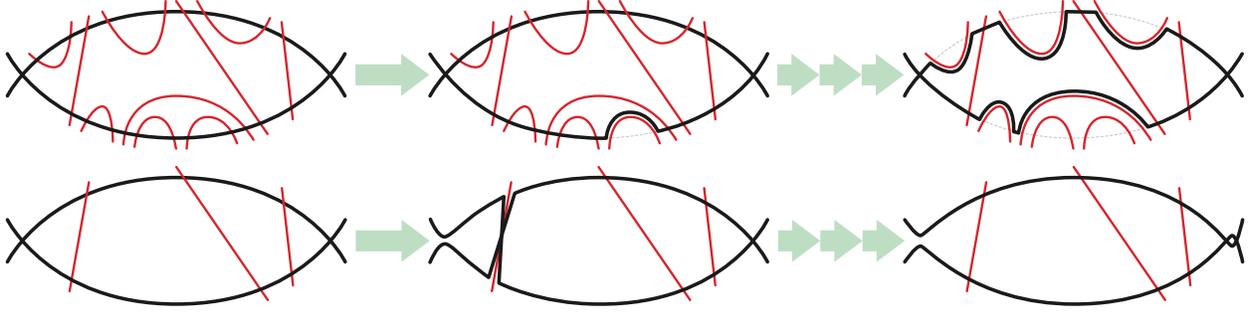


Figure 6.3. Removing a basic singular bigon on a surface with boundary. Top: Sweeping extremal blocks. Bottom: Sweeping transverse blocks.

1612 We separately analyze stage (1) and stage (2) next.

1613 **Lemma 6.4.** All extremal blocks can be removed from $\hat{\beta}$ using $O((g + b)n^2)$ moves, without changing the number
 1614 of vertices of γ .

1615 **Proof:** We actually describe how to remove every embedded bigon formed by a subpath of γ and a subpath of any
 1616 arc in Δ using at most $O((g + b)n^2)$ homotopy moves, each of which is a $3 \rightarrow 3$ move. Every extremal block in $\hat{\beta}$
 1617 projects to such an embedded bigon, because tiles (and a fortiori blocks) project injectively into the surface Σ .

1618 We proceed inductively as follows. Suppose γ and Δ bound an embedded bigon, since otherwise there is
 1619 nothing to prove. Let B be a *minimal* embedded bigon with respect to containment, bounded by a subpath δ of an
 1620 arc in Δ , and a subpath α of the curve γ . Because γ has no embedded monogons or bigons, every subpath of γ
 1621 inside B is simple, and every pair of such subpaths intersects at most once. Moreover, every such subpath has
 1622 one endpoint on α and the other endpoint on δ . Thus, the number of intersections between δ and γ is equal to
 1623 number of intersections between α and $\gamma \setminus \alpha$.

1624 To remove B , we apply the following homotopy process similar to Steinitz's algorithm (Lemma 2.2); the only
 1625 difference here is that δ is not part of the curve γ , and therefore no actual homotopy move is required if some
 1626 subpaths of δ participate in a move. We first sweep the subpath α across B until the bigon defined by α and δ
 1627 has no vertices in its interior, and then sweep α across δ without performing any additional homotopy moves, as
 1628 shown in Figure 6.4. Because the number of intersections between δ and γ is equal to number of intersections
 1629 between α and $\gamma \setminus \alpha$, this sweep does not change the number of vertices of γ .

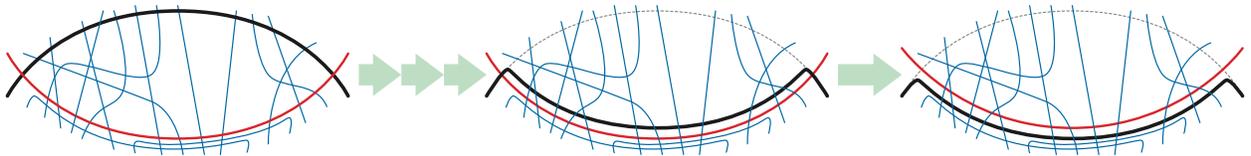


Figure 6.4. Sweeping a minimal embedded bigon bounded by a subpath of γ (black) and a subpath of Δ (red). Thin (blue) lines are other subpaths of γ .

1630 To implement the sweep, Steinitz's lemma (Lemma 2.1) implies that if the interior of B contains any vertices
 1631 of γ , then some triangular face of γ lies inside B and adjacent to an edge of α . Thus, we can reduce the number of
 1632 interior vertices of B with a single $3 \rightarrow 3$ move. It follows inductively that the number of moves required to sweep
 1633 over B is equal to the number of vertices in the interior of B , which is trivially at most n .

1634 Removing a minimal embedded bigon between γ and Δ takes at most n moves and decreases the number
 1635 of intersections between γ and Δ by 2. Each of the $O(g + b)$ arcs in Δ intersects each of the $O(n)$ edges of γ

1636 at most twice by the crossing property of Δ , so the total number of such intersections is at most $O((g+b)n)$.
 1637 Finally, because every move is a 3→3 move, we *never* change the number of vertices of γ . The lemma follows
 1638 immediately. \square

1639 Now let B_1, B_2, \dots, B_k denote the sequence of transverse blocks of $\hat{\beta}$, and let δ_i denote the common boundary
 1640 B_i and B_{i+1} for each index i . Each path δ_i is a subpath of a lift of some arc in Δ . For notational convenience, let
 1641 $x := \delta_0$ and $y := \delta_k$ denote the endpoints of $\hat{\beta}$, so that each block B_i has paths δ_{i-1} and δ_i on its boundary.

1642 Recall that λ and ρ denote the bounding subpaths of $\hat{\beta}$. To sweep over the transverse blocks, we *intuitively*
 1643 maintain a path ϕ from a point on λ to a point on ρ , which we call the **frontier**. The frontier starts as a trivial
 1644 path at the endpoint δ_0 . Then we repeatedly sweep the frontier over B_i from δ_{i-1} to δ_i , as i goes from 1 to k .
 1645 After these k iterations, the frontier lies at the endpoint δ_k .

1646 Our actual homotopy modifies the bounding curves λ and ρ as shown in the bottom of Figure 6.3. Intuitively,
 1647 the prefixes of λ and ρ “behind” ϕ are swapped; the frontier itself is actually an arbitrarily close pair of crossing
 1648 subpaths connecting the swapped prefixes of λ and ρ with the unswapped suffixes “ahead” of the frontier. Replacing
 1649 the single path ϕ with a close pair of crossing paths increases the number of homotopy moves to perform the
 1650 sweep by only a constant factor.

1651 **Lemma 6.5.** *Sweeping ϕ over one transverse block requires at most $O(n)$ homotopy moves.*

1652 **Proof:** Consider a sweep over B_i , from δ_{i-1} to δ_i . We start by moving the frontier just inside B_i , without performing
 1653 any homotopy moves. The main sweep passes ϕ over every vertex in B_i , including the vertices on the bounding
 1654 paths λ and ρ , stopping ϕ just before it reaches δ_i . Finally, we move the frontier onto δ_i without performing any
 1655 homotopy moves. Because the interior of each block projects injectively onto the surface, no other translate of ϕ
 1656 intersects B_i during the sweep.

1657 Up to constant factors, the number of homotopy moves required to sweep B_i is bounded by the number of
 1658 vertices of γ inside B_i , plus the number of intersections between γ and the bounding subpaths δ_{i-1} or δ_i . There
 1659 are trivially at most n vertices in B_i , and the crossing property of the system of arcs Δ implies that each arc in Δ
 1660 intersects γ at most $O(n)$ times. \square

1661 With the two previous lemmas in hand, we are finally ready to prove Lemma 6.3. Let γ be a closed curve in Σ
 1662 with a basic singular bigon β , let $\hat{\beta}$ be a lift of β to the universal cover of Σ , and let λ be one of the bounding
 1663 paths of $\hat{\beta}$.

1664 The definition of singular bigon implies that λ contains at most $2n$ edges of γ by Lemma 6.1. Each of these
 1665 edges crosses each arc of Δ at most twice, and there are $O(g+b)$ arcs in Δ , so λ crosses Δ at most $O((g+b)n)$
 1666 times. Each transverse block B_i except the last can be charged to the unique intersection point $\delta_i \cap \lambda$. We conclude
 1667 that $\hat{\beta}$ contains $O((g+b)n)$ transverse blocks.

1668 Sweeping inward over all extremal blocks in $\hat{\beta}$ requires $O((g+b)n^2)$ homotopy moves and does not change
 1669 the number of vertices of γ by Lemma 6.4. Sweeping over all $O((g+b)n)$ transverse blocks requires a total of
 1670 $O((g+b)n^2)$ homotopy moves by Lemma 6.5. Sweeping the transverse blocks has the same effect as smoothing
 1671 one endpoint of the bigon and doubling the other endpoint, as shown on the bottom right of Figure 6.3, which
 1672 implies that γ still has n vertices. Removing the final empty bigon with a single 2→0 move reduces the number of
 1673 vertices to $n-2$.

1674 This completes the proof of Lemma 6.3, and therefore the proof of Theorem 6.1.

6.3 Surfaces Without Boundary

In this section, we prove our upper bound for closed curves on surfaces without boundary. The following theorem improves over the $O(n^4)$ bound given by the earlier conference version [47] when the genus g is at most $n/\log^2 n$.

Theorem 6.2. *On an oriented surface without boundary, a closed curve with n self-intersections can be tightened using at most $O(gn^3 \log^2 n)$ homotopy moves.*

We follow the same high-level strategy described in Section 6.2; consequently, it suffices to prove that a basic singular bigon can be removed using $O(gn^2 \log^2 n)$ homotopy moves.

Instead of a system of arcs, we decompose the surface using a *reduced cut graph*; this cut graph induces a regular hyperbolic tiling in the universal cover of the surface. In Section 6.3.1 we describe how to compute a cut graph whose induced tiling intersects the bounding paths of any basic singular bigon at most $O(n)$ times. In Section 6.3.2, we apply Dehn’s isoperimetric inequality for regular hyperbolic tilings [75] to bound the number of tiles lying in the interior of the bigon. Then we describe our process for removing a singular bigon at two levels of detail. First, in Section 6.3.3, we provide a coarse description of the homotopy as a sequence of moves in the *bigon graph*, which is the decomposition of the lifted bigon by the tiling. We process the regions in this decomposition in a particular order to keep the number of *chords* created by translates of the moving path under control. Finally in Section 6.3.4 we obtain the actual sequence of homotopy moves by carefully perturbing the curves in the previous homotopy into general position; bounding the intersections between perturbed chords is the most delicate portion of our analysis.

6.3.1 Dual Reduced Cut Graphs

A *tree-cotree decomposition* of a cellularly embedded graph G is a partition (T, L, C) of the edges of G into three disjoint subsets: a spanning tree T of G , the edges C corresponding to a spanning tree of the dual graph G^* , and exactly $2g$ leftover edges $L := E(G) \setminus (T \cup C)$, where g is the genus of the underlying surface [86].

Let γ be a closed curve on Σ ; we temporarily view γ as a 4-regular graph with some given embedding. However, the embedding of γ is not necessarily cellular; let G be a cellular refinement of γ obtained by triangulating every face. A *dual reduced cut graph* X (hereafter, just *cut graph*) is a cellularly embedded graph obtained from a tree-cotree decomposition (T, L, C) of G as follows: Start with the subgraph of G^* induced by the dual spanning tree C^* and the leftover edges L^* , repeatedly delete vertices with degree one, and finally perform series reductions on all vertices with degree two [91].

The cut graph X inherits a cellular embedding into Σ from the embedding of G^* ; by construction, this embedding has exactly one face. Because every vertex of X has degree 3, Euler’s formula implies that X has exactly $4g - 2$ vertices and $6g - 3$ edges. To be consistent with the terminology in Section 6.2.1, we call the edges of X *arcs*. Cutting the surface Σ along X yields a polygon with $12g - 6$ sides, which we call the *fundamental polygon* of X . The cut graph induces a regular tiling \hat{X} of the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$ of Σ ; we refer to each lift of the fundamental polygon of X as a *tile*.

By construction, the cut graph X satisfies the following *crossing property*: *Each edge of the curve γ crosses X at most once.* We emphasize that this crossing property might no longer hold when we start moving the curve γ . Compared with the system of arcs we used in Section 6.2 which satisfies a weaker crossing property (that each edge of γ crosses *each* arc at most $O(1)$ times), the cut graph gives us an improved upper bound on the number of tiles intersecting the bounding paths of an embedded bigon in the universal cover of Σ .

1714 **Bigon graph.** The tiling of the universal cover of Σ induced by the cut graph X decomposes the disk bounded
 1715 by $\hat{\beta}$ into pieces; we call this decomposition the **bigon graph**. More formally, we define the bigon graph G as
 1716 follows. By construction, $\hat{\beta}$ intersects the tiling \hat{X} transversely. The vertices of G are the two endpoints of $\hat{\beta}$, the
 1717 intersections of λ and ρ with arcs of the tiling, and the vertices of the tiling in the interior of $\hat{\beta}$. The arcs of G are
 1718 subpaths of $\lambda \cup \rho$ and subpaths of tiling arcs bounded by these vertices. Finally, the bounded faces of G are the
 1719 components of the intersection of each tile with the interior of $\hat{\beta}$. We emphasize that the intersection of a single
 1720 tile with the interior of $\hat{\beta}$ may have several components.

1721 6.3.2 Isoperimetric Inequality

1722 Consider an embedded bigon $\hat{\beta}$ in the universal cover of surface Σ , which is a lift of a basic singular bigon in the
 1723 curve γ on Σ . Unlike the case of surface with boundary in Section 6.2, there may be tiles lying completely in the
 1724 interior of the bigon $\hat{\beta}$, without intersecting the two bounding paths. We bound the number of such interior tiles
 1725 using a discrete isoperimetric inequality, which is a consequence of Dehn’s seminal observation that the graph
 1726 metric defined by a regular tiling of the hyperbolic plane is a good approximation of the continuous hyperbolic
 1727 metric [75]. We provide a self-contained proof of this inequality, using a combinatorial version of the Gauss-Bonnet
 1728 theorem described at varying levels of generality by Banchoff [18], Lyndon and Schupp [174], and Gersten and
 1729 Short [111].

1730 Let G be a graph with a cellular embedding onto surface Σ , and let $\chi(\Sigma)$ be the Euler characteristic of Σ , defined
 1731 as the number of vertices and faces in G minus the number of edges in G , which is equal to $\chi(\Sigma) = 2 - 2g - b$,
 1732 where g is the genus of Σ and b is the number of boundary components of Σ . One can view the definition of the
 1733 Euler characteristic of Σ through a different lens. Assign an arbitrary real “interior angle” $\angle c$ to each corner c
 1734 of Σ . Define the **curvature** $\kappa(v)$ of a vertex v of G as $1 - \frac{1}{2} \deg v + \sum_{c \in v} (\frac{1}{2} - \angle c)$, and the **curvature** $\kappa(f)$ of a
 1735 face f of G as $1 - \sum_{c \in f} (\frac{1}{2} - \angle c)$. The following equality, which is an immediate consequence of Euler’s formula, is
 1736 known as the **combinatorial Gauss-Bonnet theorem**:

$$1737 \sum_v \kappa(v) + \sum_f \kappa(f) = \chi(\Sigma).$$

1738 Now we are ready to bound the number of faces of the bigon graph G . The **perimeter** $L(G)$ of the bigon
 1739 graph G is the number of intersections between the two bounding paths of the bigon and arcs of \hat{X} .

1740 **Lemma 6.6.** *Let Σ be a closed surface of genus $g > 1$, let γ be a closed curve on Σ , let X be the cut graph of γ
 1741 on Σ , and let G be a bigon graph of some embedded bigon $\hat{\beta}$ in $\hat{\Sigma}$. Then the number of faces in the bigon graph G
 1742 is at most $O(L(G))$.*

1743 **Proof:** Let I denote the union of all tiles in \hat{X} that lie entirely in the interior of $\hat{\beta}$ (that is, the union of all faces
 1744 of G that are actually complete tiles). The region I may be empty or disconnected; however, every component of I
 1745 is a closed disk. First we connect the number of tiles in I with the number of vertices on the boundary of I .

1746 Let D be an arbitrary component of I . Let A denote the number of tiles in D , and let L denote the number
 1747 of vertices on the boundary of D . Every boundary vertex is either incident to one interior tile and has degree 2
 1748 (convex) or incident to two interior tiles and has degree 3 (concave). Let L^+ and L^- respectively denote the
 1749 number of convex and concave vertices on the boundary of D . Assign angle $1/3$ to each corner of D , so that

- 1750 • every interior vertex has curvature 0,

- 1751 • every convex vertex has curvature $1/6$,
- 1752 • every concave vertex has curvature $-1/6$, and
- 1753 • every face has curvature $2 - 2g$.

1754 The combinatorial Gauss-Bonnet theorem now implies that $(L^+ - L^-)/6 + (2 - 2g)A = 1$, and therefore $L^+ - L^- =$
 1755 $(12g - 12)A + 6$. (In particular, $L^+ \geq L^-$.) Thus, some face f is incident to at least $12g - 11$ convex vertices, and
 1756 therefore at least $12g - 10$ arcs on the boundary of D . Deleting f from D removes at least $12g - 10$ boundary arcs
 1757 and exposes at most 4 interior arcs. The isoperimetric inequality $A \leq L/(12g - 14)$ now follows immediately by
 1758 induction.

1759 Now consider the embedded bigon $\hat{\beta}$. Because each vertex in \hat{X} has degree 3, every convex vertex of I is either
 1760 incident to an arc intersecting $\hat{\beta}$, or incident to another convex vertex of I , in which case the two convex vertices
 1761 belongs to different components of I . The number of components of I having no convex vertices incident to $\hat{\beta}$ is
 1762 strictly less than the number of those do, and therefore by an easy charging argument, there are at most $O(L(G))$
 1763 convex vertices on the boundary of I . Using the deduced inequality $L^+ \geq L^-$ from the previous paragraph, we
 1764 have now showed that I contains at most $O(L(G))$ vertices and thus at most $O(L(G)/g)$ tiles. In the mean while,
 1765 at most $O(L(G))$ faces are incident to the boundary of $\hat{\beta}$. Thus, the total number of faces of G is at most $O(L(G))$,
 1766 as claimed. \square

1767 Lemma 6.1 and the crossing property of the cut graph X imply that at most $O(n)$ tiles of Σ intersect the two
 1768 bounding paths λ and ρ of $\hat{\beta}$. Thus Lemma 6.6 implies that the bigon graph G has at most $O(n)$ faces, and
 1769 therefore $O(n)$ vertices and arcs by Euler's formula.

1770 As a corollary, one can derive a logarithmic bound on the maximum distance from any vertex of \hat{X} inside the
 1771 bigon to one of the two bounding paths.

1772 **Lemma 6.7.** *Let Σ be an orientable surface of genus $g > 1$ and γ be a closed curve on Σ . Let X be the cut graph*
 1773 *of γ on Σ and G be the corresponding bigon graph of some embedded bigon $\hat{\beta}$ in $\hat{\Sigma}$. Denote n the number of*
 1774 *vertices in G . Then the maximum distance from a vertex of G to either bounding path of $\hat{\beta}$ is at most $O(\log n)$.*

1775 **Proof:** Consider the set $S_{\leq k}$ of vertices of G with distance at most k to some fixed vertex v of G . As k grows, the
 1776 set $S_{\leq k}$ grows exponentially in size since \hat{X} is a hyperbolic tiling. This implies that for some distance $k = O(\log n)$
 1777 the set $S_{\leq k}$ has non-empty intersection with the given bounding path of $\hat{\beta}$. \square

1778 6.3.3 Coarse Homotopy

1779 Let β be a basic singular bigon in γ , let $\hat{\beta}$ be its lift to the universal cover, and let λ and ρ be the bounding paths
 1780 of $\hat{\beta}$. Our goal is to remove this bigon by swapping the bounding paths λ and ρ , which has the same effect as
 1781 smoothing the two endpoints of β , reducing the number of vertices of γ by 2. See Figure 6.5. In this section, we
 1782 construct a homotopy from λ to ρ , not as a sequence of individual homotopy moves, but as a coarser sequence
 1783 of moves in the bigon graph of $\hat{\beta}$. Applying the reversal of this sequence of moves to ρ moves it to the original
 1784 position of λ , completing the exchange of the two bounding paths.

1785 **Discrete homotopy.** We construct a *discrete homotopy* [35, 36, 133] through the bigon graph G that transforms
 1786 one bounding path λ of the bigon into the other bounding path ρ . This discrete homotopy is a sequence of walks
 1787 in G —which may traverse the same arc in G more than once—rather than a sequence of generic curves. In the

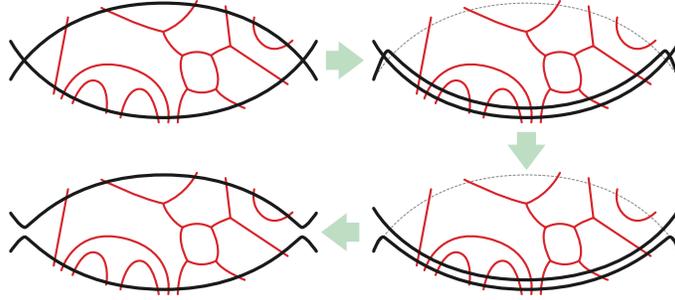


Figure 6.5. Swapping the two bounding paths of a bigon.

1788 next section, we will carefully perturb these walks into generic curves, and implement each step of the discrete
 1789 homotopy as a finite sequence of homotopy moves.

1790 Let W be a walk on the bigon graph G from one endpoint of the bigon to the other. A *spike* in W is an arc of G
 1791 followed immediately by the same arc in the opposite direction. We define two local operations for modifying W ;
 1792 see Figure 6.6.

- 1793 • **Face move:** Replace a single arc e in W with the complementary boundary walk around some face f of G
 1794 that is incident to e .
- 1795 • **Spike move:** Delete a spike from W and decrease the length of W by two.

1796 We emphasize that after a face move across face f , the frontier walk W may traverse some arcs of f more than
 1797 once; moreover, these multiple traversals may or may not be spikes. Because every face f is a disk, the arc e and
 1798 its complementary boundary walk around f share endpoints, and thus any face move can be implemented by a
 1799 homotopy across f . Similarly, a spike move can be implemented by a homotopy in the arc containing the spike. A
 1800 discrete homotopy in G is a finite sequence of face moves and spike moves. We refer to the current walk W at any
 1801 stage of this homotopy as the *frontier walk*.

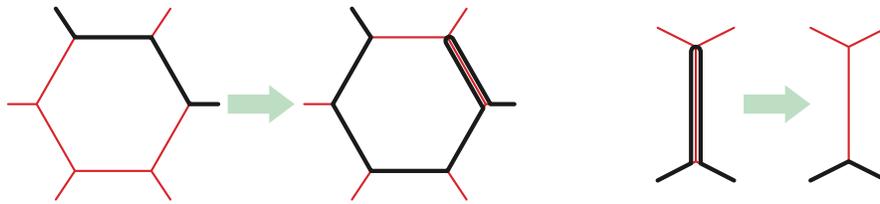


Figure 6.6. A face move and a spike move.

1802 The following result by Har-Peled *et al.* [133] guarantees the existence of some discrete homotopy whose
 1803 frontier walk is short at all times. The original result assumes that the underlying graph is triangulated; however
 1804 the proof still works on regular tilings.

1805 **Lemma 6.8 (Har-Peled *et al.* [133, Theorem 1]).** *Given an n -vertex arc-weighted bigon graph G with two*
 1806 *bounding paths λ and ρ , there is a discrete homotopy from λ to ρ whose frontier walk has (weighted) length at*
 1807 *most*

$$O(|\lambda| + |\rho| + f_* \cdot (d_* + w_*) \cdot \log n),$$

1809 where f_* is the maximum size of the faces, d_* is the maximum distance between a vertex in G and a vertex on λ ,
 1810 and w_* is the maximum arc weight over all arcs. Furthermore, each arc of G is traversed at most twice by any

1811 *frontier walk in the discrete homotopy.*

1812 Set the weight of each arc e in the bigon graph G to 0 if e is on the bounding path λ or ρ , and set the weight
 1813 to 1 otherwise. By Lemma 6.7, the maximum distance between a vertex in G and a vertex on λ is at most $O(\log n)$.
 1814 Now apply Lemma 6.8 to G , one obtains a discrete homotopy from λ to ρ where all the frontier walks have at
 1815 most $O(g \log^2 n)$ arcs of \hat{X} not on λ or ρ , and each arc of G is traversed at most twice by any frontier walk in the
 1816 discrete homotopy. By crossing property of the cut graph X , there is at most $O(n)$ crossings between $\hat{\gamma}$ and X ,
 1817 and therefore together with Lemma 6.1 all the frontier walks have at most $O(gn \log^2 n)$ crossings with $\hat{\gamma}$. We
 1818 refer these as the **frontier property** of the coarse homotopy, summarized as follow: At every stage of the discrete
 1819 homotopy,

- 1820 (a) the frontier walk W passes through at most $O(g \log^2 n)$ arcs of \hat{X} not on λ or ρ ,
- 1821 (b) the frontier walk W intersects (the original) $\hat{\gamma}$ at most $O(gn \log^2 n)$ times, and
- 1822 (c) each arc of G is traversed at most twice by any frontier walk in the discrete homotopy.

1823 6.3.4 Fine Homotopy

1824 Interactions between the moving frontier and the original curve present a significant subtlety in our algorithm. We
 1825 refine the discrete homotopy in the previous section, first by perturbing the moving frontier walk so that after
 1826 every graph move γ is a generic curve, and then by decomposing the perturbed graph moves into a finite sequence
 1827 of homotopy moves.

1828 **Perturbing the frontier.** First, given the frontier walk \hat{W} at any stage of the coarse homotopy, perturb \hat{W} into
 1829 a simple path in the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$. Based on the frontier property (c) of the coarse homotopy described in
 1830 Section 6.3.3, combinatorially there is only one such perturbation. We will denote the *perturbed frontier walk*
 1831 in $\hat{\Sigma}$ by $\hat{\omega}$. Project the perturbed frontier walk $\hat{\omega}$ back to the surface Σ to obtain the **frontier curve** ω . Notice
 1832 that the number of self-intersections of ω near any vertex of (the original) γ is at most 4 (locally it looks like
 1833 the symbol #). The frontier curve ω is not necessarily generic, as subpaths of ω near the cut graph X could overlap
 1834 each other in unspecified ways.

1835 To specify the perturbation near the cut graph X , we define a convenient family \mathcal{O} of open sets, which we
 1836 call **bubbles**, that covers the cut graph X and its complement face in Σ , following a construction of Babson and
 1837 Chan [17]. (See also Erickson [89].) Each bubble in \mathcal{O} is either a vertex bubble, an arc bubble, or a face bubble.

1838 The vertex bubbles are disjoint open balls around the vertices of X . The arc bubbles are disjoint open
 1839 neighborhoods of the portions of the arcs of X away from the vertices. Finally, the face bubble is an open
 1840 neighborhoods of the portions of $\Sigma \setminus X$ away from the vertices and the arcs; there is only one face bubble in \mathcal{O} . The
 1841 intersection of all pairs of two bubbles of different types is the disjoint union of open disks, one for each incidence
 1842 between the corresponding vertex and arc, vertex and face, or arc and face of X . See Figure 6.7.

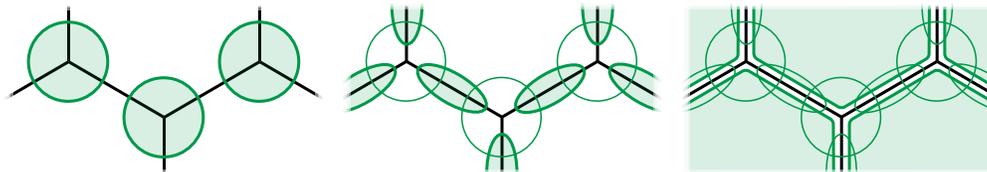


Figure 6.7. Vertex bubbles, arc bubbles, and face bubbles.

1843 We now describe how to draw the frontier curve ω near the cut graph X so that the complexity inside each
 1844 bubble of X is controlled. We model each arc bubble as a *Euclidean* rectangle containing several straight segments
 1845 parallel to the arc, which we call **tracks**, arranged so that each track in the arc bubble of e intersects γ transversely.
 1846 (The metric is merely a convenience, so that we can write “straight” and “parallel”; the tracks can be defined
 1847 purely combinatorially.)

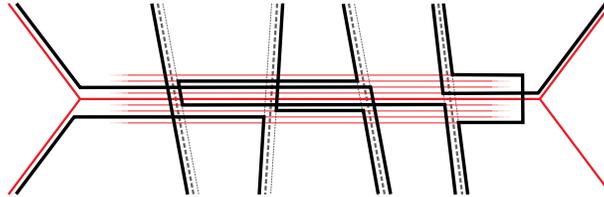


Figure 6.8. Closeup of an arc bubble of some arc e in X , showing subpaths of the frontier ω sticking to subpaths in e , including the perturbations of two spikes.

1848 Now consider a frontier curve ω ; each maximal subpath along some arc e of X is drawn on a unique track in
 1849 the arc bubble of e . Moreover, when ω switches from arc e to another arc e' (including at the tip of a spike at a
 1850 vertex of X , which we view as a zero-length walk), there is a corner at the intersection of those two tracks. The
 1851 part of ω that follows the bounding paths λ and ρ stays unchanged.

1852 Thus, every subpath of ω inside the arc bubble of some arc e alternates between tracks parallel to e and either
 1853 (1) tracks parallel to other arcs or (2) parallel to the bounding paths λ and ρ . Intuitively, we say that a subpath of
 1854 ω **sticks to** an arc of X if the subpath lies on some track in the corresponding arc bubble. Similarly, we say that a
 1855 subpath of ω **sticks to** the bounding paths λ and ρ if the corresponding subpath of \hat{W} traverses arcs of G on $\hat{\lambda}$
 1856 and $\hat{\rho}$ in the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$. See Figure 6.8.

1857 **Graph moves revisited.** In our perturbed homotopy, we require every face move to be performed entirely within
 1858 the corresponding face bubble, and every spike move to be performed entirely within the corresponding arc bubble,
 1859 while maintaining the track structure of the perturbed frontier ω . To this end, we introduce two additional graph
 1860 moves for modifying the frontier curve ω .

- 1861 • **Arc move:** Move a maximal subpath sticking to an arc e of X into an incident face bubble, within the arc
 1862 bubble of e implemented by switching tracks.
- 1863 • **Vertex move:** Move the curve across a vertex v of X within the corresponding vertex bubble.

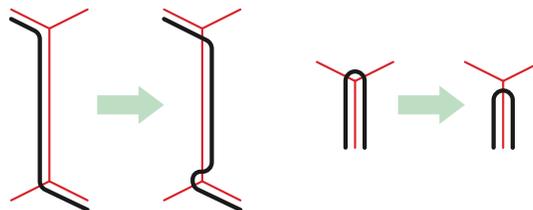


Figure 6.9. An arc move and a vertex move.

1864 The arc moves and vertex moves can be seen as preprocessing steps to ensure that a subpath of ω lies in the
 1865 proper face or arc bubble before performing a face or a spike move. Thus, our perturbed coarse homotopy still
 1866 follows the outline given in Section 6.3.3, but now each face move might be prefaced by a single arc move, and
 1867 each spike move might be prefaced by a single vertex move, as shown in Figure 6.10.

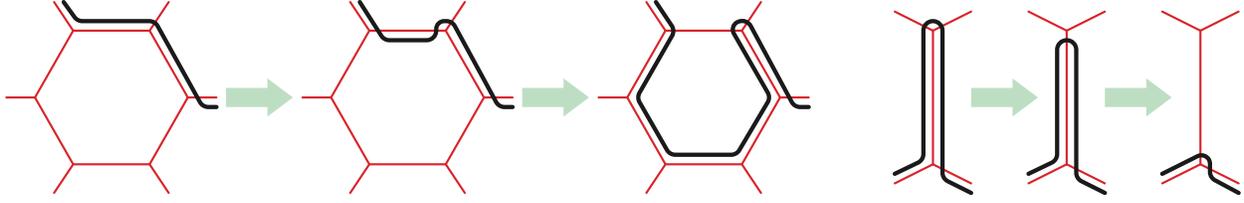


Figure 6.10. Top: An arc move followed by a face move. Bottom: A vertex move followed by a spike move.

1868 We emphasize that every face move is performed entirely within a face bubble, every arc move and spike move
 1869 is performed entirely within an arc bubble, and every vertex move is performed entirely within a vertex bubble.
 1870 Therefore each graph move can be implemented solely on the original surface Σ .

1871 **The final homotopy.** Finally, we construct a sequence of homotopy moves moving one bounding path λ to the
 1872 other bounding path ρ by decomposing the perturbed graph moves.

1873 **Lemma 6.9.** *Let Σ be an orientable surface without boundary, and let γ be a closed curve with n vertices on Σ
 1874 that contains a basic singular bigon β , but no embedded monogons or bigons. Then β can be removed using
 1875 $O(gn^2 \log^2 n)$ homotopy moves, without changing the rest of γ .*

1876 **Proof:** Let $\hat{\beta}$ be the lift of β to the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$; let $\hat{\lambda}$ and $\hat{\rho}$ be the bounding curves of $\hat{\beta}$ in $\hat{\Sigma}$; let G be the
 1877 corresponding bigon graph. Our earlier analysis implies that G has at most $O(n)$ vertices, arcs, and faces. Thus,
 1878 moving $\hat{\lambda}$ to $\hat{\rho}$ requires at most $O(n)$ graph moves.

1879 Each of these graph moves is performed within a bubble in \mathcal{O} that embeds in Σ , and therefore can be realized
 1880 using $O(m)$ homotopy moves, where m is the number of vertices of γ within that bubble before the graph move
 1881 begins. It remains only to prove the following claim:

1882 Between any two graph moves, the number of vertices of γ inside any bubble is at most $O(gn \log^2 n)$.

1883 The proof of this claim is surprisingly delicate. All the properties we mentioned in each of the previous subsections
 1884 contribute to avoid the danger of increasing the number of vertices in γ uncontrollably during the process:
 1885 (1) dividing the homotopy into graph moves (Section 6.3.1 and Section 6.3.2), (2) the order of face moves
 1886 (Section 6.3.3), and (3) the way the perturbed frontier curve lies near the cut graph (Section 6.3.4). For the rest
 1887 of the proof we refer to subpaths of the frontier curve ω within a bubble simply as *chords*.

1888 The maximum number of vertices of curve γ inside a bubble between two graph moves is at most the sum
 1889 of the number of vertices of γ before the homotopy, the number of intersections between the original γ and the
 1890 chords, and the number of intersections between pairs of chords. The first term is at most n by definition; the
 1891 frontier property (b) of the coarse homotopy implies that the second term is at most $O(gn \log^2 n)$. To bound the
 1892 last term, we separately consider each type of bubble:

- 1893 • *Face bubble:* Because vertices and arcs of the tiling do not lie inside a face bubble, every chord in a face
 1894 bubble sticks to the bounding paths λ or ρ . The way we construct the perturbed frontier curve ω ensures
 1895 that at most two chords stick to the same subpath of λ or ρ in the bubble. Since both λ and ρ are subpaths
 1896 of γ , we can charge the intersections between chords to the corresponding vertices in (the original) γ . There
 1897 are at most n vertices of γ in the face bubble, and therefore at most $O(n)$ vertices are created by intersecting
 1898 chords within the bubble.

- 1899 • *Arc bubbles:* Our construction ensures that the chords within each arc bubble are polygonal curves, and the
1900 number of intersections between two such chords does not exceed the sum of the number of segments in
1901 each of them. The frontier property (c) of the coarse homotopy implies that each arc of X is traversed by \hat{W}
1902 at most twice, and therefore each chord sticking to e consists of at most $O(1)$ segments. It follows that any
1903 pair of chords that stick to the arc intersect $O(1)$ times. The frontier property (a) of the coarse homotopy
1904 implies that \hat{W} always traverse at most $O(g \log^2 n)$ arcs not on the bounding paths λ and ρ . This in turn
1905 implies that there are at most $O(g \log^2 n)$ chords inside any arc bubble that stick to the arc, and at most
1906 $O(g \log^2 n)$ tracks are needed for any arc bubble. By crossing property of the cut graph, at most $O(n)$ chords
1907 stick to λ and ρ , We conclude that at most $O(gn \log^2 n)$ vertices are created by intersecting chords within
1908 any arc bubble.
- 1909 • *Vertex bubbles:* Being subpaths of γ , bounding paths λ and ρ will never intersect the vertex bubbles. Thus,
1910 each chord in a vertex bubble sticks to a walk on the arcs of X incident to the vertex, which must have length
1911 2. Our construction of the perturbed frontier ω ensures that each pair of these chords intersects at most $O(1)$
1912 times. Similar to the case of the arc bubble, there are at most $O(\log^2 n)$ chords inside any vertex bubble. We
1913 conclude that at most $O(\log^4 n)$ vertices are created by chords intersecting within any vertex bubble.

1914 This concludes the proof. □

1915 **Summary.** We conclude by summarizing our proof of Theorem 6.2. Let γ be a closed curve on an orientable
1916 surface without boundary. If γ is not yet tightened, Lemma 6.2 implies that after at most one $0 \rightarrow 1$ move (see
1917 Figure 6.2), γ contains at least one basic singular bigon. By Lemma 6.9, we can decrease the number of vertices
1918 of γ by two by removing one basic singular bigon in $O(gn^2 \log^2 n)$ homotopy moves. After $O(n)$ such bigon
1919 removals, all the excess intersections of γ must have been removed. We conclude that γ can be tightened using at
1920 most $O(gn^3 \log^2 n)$ homotopy moves.

1921 6.4 Tightening Curves Using Monotonic Homotopy Moves

1922 The proofs of Hass and Scott [136] and de Graaf and Schrijver [125] have the additional benefit that the number
1923 of vertices of the curve never increases during the homotopy process.¹ It would be much preferable if our efficient
1924 homotopy processes in Section 6.2 and Section 6.3 are monotonic as well; in other words, we are looking for a
1925 sequence of polynomially many *monotonic* homotopy moves to tighten the given multicurve.

1926 We made partial progress towards such a goal. In particular, we show that it is sufficient to assume the surface
1927 has boundary. Let γ be a multicurve on Σ , and let γ_* be the unique **geodesic** of γ on Σ —a multicurve consisting of
1928 each shortest representative among the homotopy class of the constituent curves in γ . Let the **ε -neighborhood** of
1929 a curve γ be the union of all ε -disks centered at some point of γ . We say the curve γ is **ε -close** to the geodesic γ_* if
1930 the lift of γ in the universal cover lies in an ε -neighborhood of the lift of γ_* .

1931 **Lemma 6.10.** *Let γ be an n -vertex noncontractible curve on a genus- g orientable surface Σ and let γ_* be the*
1932 *unique geodesic of γ on Σ . Curve γ can be made ε -close to γ_* using $O(n^5 \log^3 g/g^2)$ monotonic homotopy moves*
1933 *for some $\varepsilon = O(g/(n \log g))$; furthermore, the ε -neighborhood of γ_* does not cover the whole surface Σ .*

¹De Graaf and Schrijver's result requires a fourth type of homotopy move, which moves an isolated simple contractible constituent curve from one face of the rest of the multicurve to another. However, since this move can only be applied to disconnected multicurves, it does not affect our argument.

1934 The proof of Lemma 6.10 can be viewed as an efficient implementation of the first step of the algorithm by
 1935 de Graaf and Schrijver, moving the curve close to the unique geodesic of its homotopy class. Our proof relies
 1936 heavily on hyperbolic trigonometry; for a clean introduction to the topic see Traver [241].

1937 6.4.1 Moving Curves Close to Geodesics

1938 In this subsection we prove Lemma 6.10. Let Θ be a tangle whose disk is endowed with a hyperbolic metric.
 1939 Tangle Θ is *straightened* if all the strands of Θ are geodesics with respect to d_H . We emphasize the difference
 1940 between *straightened* and *tightened*; a straightened tangle must be tightened, but *not* vice versa. We will make use
 1941 of the following quantitative version of Ringel’s homotopy theorem [203, 204] (see also [120, 125, 136, 211]).

1942 **Lemma 6.11 (Hass and Scott [136, Lemma 1.6]).** *Any n -vertex tangle can be straightened (with respect to a*
 1943 *hyperbolic metric) monotonically using $O(n^2)$ homotopy moves.*

1944 **Construct hyperbolic metric.** First we modify γ by straightening all the strands of within the open disk $\Sigma \setminus X$
 1945 using $O(n^2)$ moves by Lemma 6.11. Now we construct a hyperbolic metric on surface Σ such that

- 1946 (1) the length of the (modified) curve γ is at most $O(n \log g)$, and
- 1947 (2) the length of the shortest non-contractible cycle (known as the *systole*) is at least 1.

1948 The construction is similar to the argument in Dehn’s seminal result [75] that the graph distance on a regular
 1949 tiling of the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$ approximates the hyperbolic metric on $\hat{\Sigma}$. Construct the cut graph X from curve γ
 1950 such that every edge of γ crosses X at most $O(1)$ times, like we described in Section 6.3.1. Lift the cut graph X to
 1951 the universal cover endowed with the unique hyperbolic metric, such that each corner has angle $1/3$ circles; this
 1952 implies that each side of the fundamental polygon has length at least 1.² One can project the metric back to the
 1953 original surface; denote the hyperbolic metric constructed as d_H .

1954 To prove that the hyperbolic metric d_H defined on surface Σ satisfies property (1), consider the modified curve γ
 1955 where all strands within the open disk $\Sigma \setminus X$ are straightened. Note that any geodesic path not intersecting X has
 1956 length at most $O(\log g)$ (which is the diameter of the fundamental polygon with respect to d_H). By Lemma 6.1 this
 1957 implies that the length of the modified γ is at most $O(n \log g)$, thus the hyperbolic metric d_H satisfies property (1).

1958 As for property (2), consider any non-contractible cycle σ on surface Σ ; without loss of generality assume σ
 1959 to be a geodesic. If we lift σ to the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$ such that the lift $\hat{\sigma}$ starts and ends on the lift \hat{X} of the cut
 1960 graph X , because σ is non-contractible, the two arcs of \hat{X} where $\hat{\sigma}$ starts and ends respectively are two different
 1961 translates of the same arc in X . Consider the sequence of arcs a_0, \dots, a_k in \hat{X} intersected by $\hat{\sigma}$. Because σ is a
 1962 geodesic and every vertex in \hat{X} has degree 3, one has $a_i \neq a_{i+1}$ and no a_i is incident to a_{i+2} for all i . If for some i
 1963 the two arcs a_i and a_{i+1} are not incident to each other (that is, a_i and a_{i+1} do not share a vertex in \hat{X}), then by
 1964 hyperbolic trigonometry the length of the subpath of $\hat{\sigma}$ connecting a_i to a_{i+1} is at least the length of the side of
 1965 the polygon, which is at least 1. Otherwise, if a_i is incident to a_{i+1} and a_{i+1} is incident to a_{i+2} , as a_i is not incident
 1966 to a_{i+2} , by reflecting the subpath of $\hat{\sigma}$ from a_{i+1} to a_{i+2} to the tile that contains a_i and a_{i+1} we again have the
 1967 length of the subpath of $\hat{\sigma}$ lower-bounded by the length of a_{i+1} . This proves that d_H satisfies property (2).

1968 **Tortuosity.** Let $\gamma : [0, 1] \rightarrow \Sigma$ be a curve. Denote $D(x, r)$ the disk centered at point x with radius r (with respect
 1969 the metric d_H). Let I_t be the maximal interval of $[0, 1]$ containing t such that $\gamma(I_t)$ lies in the disk $D(\gamma(t), 1/2)$.

²To be accurate, the length of the side is equal to $2 \cosh^{-1}(\sin(2\pi/6) \cdot \cos(2\pi/(24g - 12)))$.

1970 The *tortuosity* [125] of curve γ at point t , denoted as $\mathit{tort}(\gamma, t)$, is the difference between the length of the
 1971 subpath of γ lying in the disk of radius $1/2$ centered at $\gamma(t)$ and the geodesic distance between the two endpoints
 1972 of the subpath. Formally,

$$1973 \quad \mathit{tort}(\gamma, t) := |\gamma(I_t)| - d_H(\gamma(I_t(0)), \gamma(I_t(1))).$$

1974 Practically speaking, the tortuosity of γ at point t is equal the improvement one will make after straightening the
 1975 disk $D(\gamma(t), 1/2)$. The *tortuosity* of curve γ is the supremum of $\mathit{tort}(\gamma, t)$ where t ranges over $[0, 1]$. The goal of
 1976 the following lemma is to prove that when the tortuosity of the curve is small, then the whole curve is ε -close to
 1977 its unique geodesic. In other words, as long as the curve γ has points that are at least ε away from the geodesic,
 1978 we can always find a disk centered at some point of γ whose straightening will decrease the length of γ by at least
 1979 fixed amount, depending only on ε .

1980 **Lemma 6.12.** *For any small $\varepsilon > 0$, if the tortuosity of γ is at most $O(\varepsilon^2)$, then γ is ε -close to the geodesic γ_* .*

1981 **Proof:** We will prove the contrapositive statement using hyperbolic trigonometry. For the sake of generality we
 1982 temporarily treat r as a variable; at the end of the calculation one just plugin $r := 1/2$. Here we list two identities
 1983 that will be used in our proof.

1984 (1) For any real number x , $\sinh(2x) = 2 \sinh x \cosh x$ and $(\cosh(x))^2 - (\sinh(x))^2 = 1$.

1985 (2) Given an arbitrary *Saccheri quadrilateral* with the lengths of the legs, base, and top as a , b , and c respectively,
 1986 then

$$1987 \quad \sinh \frac{c}{2} = \cosh a \cdot \sinh \frac{b}{2}.$$

1988 Lift both γ and γ_* to the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$; denote the resulting paths as $\hat{\gamma}$ and $\hat{\gamma}_*$ accordingly. Let t be a point
 1989 in $[0, 1]$ such that $\hat{\gamma}(t)$ has maximum distance to $\hat{\gamma}_*$. Refer to point $\hat{\gamma}(t)$ as p and the maximum distance as δ ;
 1990 by assumption δ is at least ε . Our goal is to prove that the tortuosity of γ at t is at least $\Omega(\varepsilon^2)$. Denote the two
 1991 endpoints of the maximal subpath of $\hat{\gamma}$ in $D(p, r)$ containing p as x and y , and the maximal subpath itself as
 1992 $\hat{\gamma}[x, y]$. One has

$$1993 \quad \mathit{tort}(\gamma, t) = |\hat{\gamma}[x, y]| - d_H(x, y) \geq 2r - d_H(x, y).$$

1994 Here without loss of generality we will assume that x and y are both at distance exactly δ to $\hat{\gamma}_*$. The reason
 1995 one can make such an assumption is because, as one moves x and y perpendicularly along the geodesics away
 1996 from $\hat{\gamma}_*$, $d_H(x, y)$ increases and therefore the tortuosity when both x and y are at distance δ is a lower bound to
 1997 the original tortuosity.

1998 What is left is to upper bound $d_H(x, y)$. Let x^* , p^* , and y^* be the points on $\hat{\gamma}_*$ that have minimum distance to
 1999 x , p , and y respectively. By identity (2) one has

$$2000 \quad \sinh(d_H(x, y)/2) = \cosh \delta \cdot \sinh(d_H(x^*, y^*)/2)$$

2001 and

$$2002 \quad \sinh(r/2) = \cosh \delta \cdot \sinh(d_H(x^*, y^*)/4).$$

2003 The second equality gives us

$$2004 \quad d_H(x^*, y^*)/2 = 2 \sinh^{-1} \left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta} \right),$$

2005 plug back to the first equation one has

$$2006 \quad \sinh(d_H(x, y)/2) = \cosh \delta \cdot \sinh\left(2 \sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta}\right)\right).$$

2007 Apply identity (1) on the first hyperbolic sine, one has

$$\begin{aligned} 2008 \quad \sinh(d_H(x, y)/2) &= \cosh \delta \cdot 2 \cdot \sinh\left(\sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta}\right)\right) \cdot \cosh\left(\sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta}\right)\right) \\ 2009 \quad &= \cosh \delta \cdot 2 \cdot \left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta}\right) \cdot \cosh\left(\sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta}\right)\right) \\ 2010 \quad &= 2 \cdot \sinh(r/2) \cdot \left(1 + \left(\sinh\left(\sinh^{-1}\left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta}\right)\right)\right)^2\right)^{1/2} \\ 2011 \quad &= 2 \cdot \sinh(r/2) \cdot \left(1 + \left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta}\right)^2\right)^{1/2}. \end{aligned}$$

2012 This shows that

$$2013 \quad d_H(x, y) = 2 \cdot \sinh^{-1}\left(2 \cdot \sinh(r/2) \cdot \left(1 + \left(\frac{\sinh(r/2)}{\cosh \delta}\right)^2\right)^{1/2}\right)$$

2014 by identity (2). Taylor expand $d_H(x, y)$ around $\delta = 0$ gives us

$$2015 \quad d_H(x, y) = 2r - \frac{(\sinh(r/2))^3}{\cosh(r/2) \cdot \cosh(r)} \delta^2 + O(\delta^4),$$

2016 and therefore $\text{tort}(\gamma, t) \geq \Omega(\delta^2) \geq \Omega(\varepsilon^2)$. □

2017 **Exposing points outside the neighborhood.** Now we proceed to bound ε so that the ε -neighborhood of the geodesic γ_* does not cover the whole surface Σ .

2018 **Lemma 6.13.** *Let γ be an n -vertex curve on Σ . Then the ε -neighborhood of γ_* does not cover the whole surface Σ if ε is at most $O(g/(n \log g))$.*

2019 **Proof:** Given any curve γ with the corresponding unique (close) geodesic γ_* on surface Σ with the constructed hyperbolic metric d_H , the length of γ_* is at most $O(n \log g)$ by property (1). For small enough ε , the area of the ε -neighborhood of a curve with length ℓ is at most $O(\varepsilon \ell)$.³ The area of the surface is precisely $(4g - 4)\pi$. (This follows directly from Gauss-Bonnet theorem which is independent to the hyperbolic metric up to scaling.⁴) This implies that for the ε -neighborhood of γ_* to cover the whole surface Σ , the following holds:

$$2020 \quad \varepsilon \geq \frac{(4g - 4)\pi}{O(n \log g)} \geq \Omega\left(\frac{g}{n \log g}\right)$$

2021 In other words, if we set $\varepsilon \leq O(g/(n \log g))$, then the ε -neighborhood of γ_* cannot cover the whole surface Σ , thus proving the lemma. □

³To see this, cover the neighborhood with kite-like *Lambert quadrilaterals* with length of the short sides as ε . The only acute angle α of the quadrilateral is equal to $\arccos((\sinh \varepsilon)^2)$. The area of the quadrilateral is equal to the angle deficit, which is $\pi/2 - \alpha$. In combine the area of the quadrilateral is at most $O(\varepsilon^2)$, and thus the total area of the ε -neighborhood on Σ is at most $O(\varepsilon^2 \cdot \ell/\varepsilon) = O(\varepsilon \ell)$.

⁴Alternatively, one can derive the area directly: divide the fundamental polygon into $12g - 6$ triangles by drawing straight-lines from the center of the polygon to all vertices, and use the area formula for triangles.

2031 Basmajian, Parlier, and Souto [20] showed that for any fixed genus g , the $O(1/n)$ bound in Lemma 6.13 is
2032 tight up to logarithmic factors.

2033 **Putting it together.** Now we are ready to prove Lemma 6.10. Consider the set of disks centered at each point
2034 on the curve with radius $1/2$, which is smaller than half the systole by property (2); therefore all such disks are
2035 embedded in Σ . Straighten any disk using Lemma 6.11 if the tortuosity of the center point is at least ε^2 . Once
2036 every point on γ has tortuosity less than ε^2 , by Lemma 6.12 the curve γ now lies in the ε -neighborhood of γ_* .

2037 Straighten a disk takes $O(n^2)$ moves using Lemma 6.11. The tortuosity at a center of each disk is a lower
2038 bound on the difference between the lengths of the curve γ before and after straightening. From property (1) of
2039 the hyperbolic metric d_H the length of γ is at most $O(n \log g)$. Every time a disk is straightened the length of the
2040 curve γ will drop by at least ε^2 . Since γ is noncontractible, the length of any curve homotopic to γ is at least the
2041 systole, which is $\Omega(1)$ by property (2). Therefore at most $O(n \log g / \varepsilon^2)$ disks will be straighten before every point
2042 has tortuosity less than ε^2 . In total at most $O(n^3 \log g / \varepsilon^2)$ homotopy moves are performed. From Lemma 6.13,
2043 setting $\varepsilon := O(g / (n \log g))$ concludes the proof of Lemma 6.10.

Chapter 7

Electrical Transformations

I believe in love at first sight.

You want that connection, and then you want some problems.

— Keanu Reeves

In this section we explore the close relationship between electrical transformations for graphs and homotopy moves for curves on arbitrary surfaces. We start with some possible different definitions of electrical transformations performed on graphs with embeddings. Then we focus on the most restrictive version—the *facial* electrical transformations—and work with them at the level of medial multicurves. Quantitative connections between such transformations and the homotopy moves are the main focus of the rest of the section. We conclude our discussion of the connection with an application, by providing tight lower bounds on the number of electrical transformations required to reduce plane graphs with or without terminals using results we derived in previous chapters.

7.1 Types of Electrical Transformations

Electrical transformations defined on general graphs consist of the following set of local operations performed on any graph:

- *Leaf contraction*: Contract the edge incident to a vertex of degree 1.
- *Loop deletion*: Delete the edge of a loop.
- *Series reduction*: Contract either edge incident to a vertex of degree 2.
- *Parallel reduction*: Delete one of a pair of parallel edges.
- $Y \rightarrow \Delta$ *transformation*: Delete a vertex of degree 3 and connect its neighbors with three new edges.
- $\Delta \rightarrow Y$ *transformation*: Delete the edges of a 3-cycle and join the vertices of the cycle to a new vertex.

We distinguish between three increasingly general types of electrical transformations on graphs embedded on a surface: *facial*, *crossing-free*, and *arbitrary*.

An electrical transformation in a graph G embedded on a surface Σ is *facial* if any deleted cycle is a face of G . All leaf contractions, series reductions, and $Y \rightarrow \Delta$ transformations are facial, but loop deletions, parallel reductions, and $\Delta \rightarrow Y$ transformations may not be facial. As we have seen in the introduction and preliminaries (Sections 1.2 and 2.5.2), facial electrical transformations form three dual pairs, as shown in Figure 1.2; for example, any series reduction in G is equivalent to a parallel reduction in the dual graph G^* .

An electrical transformation in G is *crossing-free* if it preserves the embeddability of the underlying graph into the same surface. Equivalently, an electrical transformation is crossing-free if the vertices of the cycle deleted by the transformation are all incident to a common face (in the given embedding) of G . All facial electrical transformations are trivially crossing-free, as are all loop deletions and parallel reductions. If the graph embeds

2072 in the plane then crossing-free electrical transformations are also called *planar*. (For ease of presentation, we
 2073 assume throughout this chapter that plane graphs are actually embedded on the *sphere* instead of the plane.) The
 2074 only non-crossing-free electrical transformation is a $\Delta \rightarrow Y$ transformation whose three vertices are *not* incident to
 2075 a common face; any such transformation introduces a $K_{3,3}$ -minor into the graph, connecting the three vertices of
 2076 the Δ to an interior vertex, an exterior vertex, and the new Y vertex.

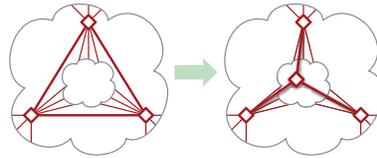


Figure 7.1. A non-planar $\Delta \rightarrow Y$ transformation.

2077 7.2 Connection Between Electrical and Homotopy Moves

2078 Recall that facial electrical transformations in any plane graph G correspond to local operations in the medial
 2079 graph G^\times known as the *medial electrical moves*; we refer them as *electrical moves* for short in this chapter (see
 2080 Figure 1.3).

2081 For any connected multicurve (or 4-regular graph) γ on surface Σ ,

- 2082 • let $X(\gamma)$ denote the minimum number of electrical moves required to tighten γ on Σ ,
- 2083 • let $H^\downarrow(\gamma)$ denote the minimum number of homotopy moves required to tighten γ on Σ , without ever increase
 2084 the number of vertices. In other words, no $0 \rightarrow 1$ and $0 \rightarrow 2$ moves are allowed.
- 2085 • let $H(\gamma)$ denote the minimum number of homotopy moves required to tighten γ on Σ .

2086 As we mentioned in Section 6.4, de Graaf and Schrijver [125] proved that any multicurve γ can be tightened
 2087 using monotonic homotopy moves, which implies that $H^\downarrow(\gamma) = 0$ if and only if $H(\gamma) = 0$. In other words, standard
 2088 homotopy moves and monotonic homotopy moves share the same set of target multicurves with minimum number
 2089 of vertices. Now by definition one has $H^\downarrow(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma)$ for any multicurve γ on surface Σ .

2090 Tightening curves using electrical moves is a more difficult problem than tightening curves using homotopy
 2091 moves. Modulo some conjectures we will discuss shortly, in the following subsections we argue that the number of
 2092 electrical moves required is polynomially-related to the number of *monotonic* homotopy moves required.

2093 As initial evidence, both Steinitz's algorithm and Feo-Provan's algorithm can easily be adapted to simplify
 2094 planar curves monotonically, simply by replacing each $2 \rightarrow 1$ move encountered with a $2 \rightarrow 0$ move and recursing. A
 2095 subtlety here is that we do not know *a priori* whether tightening a multicurve using electrical moves will result in
 2096 the same multicurve as tightening using homotopy moves (or whether the two tightened multicurves even have
 2097 the same number of vertices). Notice that we don't have such a problem in the plane as all planar multicurves can
 2098 be tightened to simple curves using either electrical or homotopy moves. One direction follows from de Graaf and
 2099 Schrijver [125].

2100 **Lemma 7.1.** *Let γ be a connected multicurve on an arbitrary surface Σ . If γ is electrically tight, then γ is*
 2101 *homotopically tight.*

2102 **Proof:** Let γ be a connected multicurve in some arbitrary surface, and suppose γ is not homotopically tight. Result
 2103 of de Graaf and Schrijver [125] implies that γ can be tightened by a finite sequence of homotopy moves that never
 2104 increases the number of vertices. In particular, applying some finite sequence of 3→3 moves to γ creates either an
 2105 empty monogon, which can be removed by a 1→0 move, or an empty bigon, which can be removed by either a
 2106 2→0 move or a 2→1 move. Thus, γ is not e-tight. \square

2107 The main obstacle in showing the opposite direction is that we don't have a similar monotonicity result like de
 2108 Graaf and Schrijver [125] for electrical moves on arbitrary surfaces. In Sections 7.2.2 and 7.2.3 the monotonicity
 2109 results are established for both planar and annular multicurves, which implies that the two types of tightness
 2110 are indeed equivalent for those multicurves. We conjecture that the same holds for arbitrary multicurve on any
 2111 surface.

2112 **Conjecture 7.1.** *Any multicurve on any surface Σ is electrically tight if and only if it is homotopically tight.*

2113 Assume Conjecture 7.1 holds, we can formally compare the number of electrical moves to the number of
 2114 homotopy moves required to tighten a multicurve. The following lemma demonstrates that monotonic homotopy
 2115 moves are indeed closely related to electrical moves.

2116 **Lemma 7.2.** *Assume Conjecture 7.1 holds. Fix an arbitrary surface Σ . Let $f(n)$ be a non-decreasing function. If
 2117 $H^\downarrow(\gamma) \leq f(n)$ holds for all multicurves γ on Σ with n vertices, then $X(\gamma) \leq n \cdot f(n)$ also holds for all γ .*

2118 **Proof:** Given a minimum-length sequence of monotonic homotopy moves that tightens γ . If $H^\downarrow(\gamma) = 0$, assuming
 2119 Conjecture 7.1 one has $X(\gamma) = 0$ as well and thus the statement trivially holds. Otherwise, consider the first move
 2120 in the sequence that decreases the number of vertices in γ (that is, either a 1→0 or 2→0 move). Replace the 2→0
 2121 move with a 2→1 if needed, one arrives at a curve γ' that has strictly less vertices than γ . The number of homotopy
 2122 moves in the sequence from the original γ to γ' is at most $H^\downarrow(\gamma)$. Now by induction on the number of vertices,

$$\begin{aligned}
 2123 \quad X(\gamma) &\leq X(\gamma') + H^\downarrow(\gamma) \\
 2124 &\leq (n-1) \cdot H^\downarrow(\gamma') + H^\downarrow(\gamma) \\
 2125 &\leq (n-1) \cdot f(n-1) + f(n) \\
 2126 &\leq n \cdot f(n), \\
 2127
 \end{aligned}$$

2128 which proves the lemma. \square

2129 After presenting all the necessary terminologies, in Section 7.2.4 we will introduce the *strong smoothing*
 2130 *conjecture* (Conjecture 7.3) which implies both Conjecture 7.1 (and thus Lemma 7.2 without the assumption), and
 2131 the opposite direction of the inequality between $H^\downarrow(\gamma)$ and $X(\gamma)$ (see Lemma 7.16). We discuss other consequences
 2132 and partial attempts towards proving Conjecture 7.1 in the same section.

2133 Before that, we provide evidence to the conjecture(s) in Section 7.2.2 and Section 7.2.3 by showing that for
 2134 arbitrary planar and annular curves, both Conjecture 7.1 and the inequality $X(\gamma) + O(n) \geq H^\downarrow(\gamma)$ holds. This
 2135 demonstrates that $X(\gamma)$ and $H^\downarrow(\gamma)$ are at most a linear factor away from each other for planar or annular curve γ .

2136 7.2.1 Smoothing Lemma—Inductive case

2137 The following key lemma follows from close reading of proofs by Truemper [242, Lemma 4] and several others [12,
 2138 115, 181, 184] that every minor of a ΔY -reducible graph is also ΔY -reducible. Our proof most closely resembles

2139 an argument of Gitler [115, Lemma 2.3.3], but restated in terms of electrical moves on multicurves to simplify
 2140 the case analysis. In his PhD thesis [122, Proposition 5.1], de Graaf provided a proof to some special case of the
 2141 lemma at the level of medial curves.

2142 **Lemma 7.3.** *Let γ be any connected multicurve on surface Σ , and let $\check{\gamma}$ be a connected smoothing of γ . Applying
 2143 any sequence of electrical moves to γ to obtain γ' ; let x be the number of electrical moves in the sequence. Then
 2144 one can apply a similar sequence of electrical moves of length at most x to $\check{\gamma}$ to obtain a (possibly trivial) connected
 2145 smoothing $\check{\gamma}'$ of γ' .*

2146 **Proof:** We prove the statement by induction on the number of electrical moves in the sequence and the number
 2147 of smoothed vertices. If $\check{\gamma} = \gamma$ then the statement trivially holds. Otherwise, we first consider the special case
 2148 where $\check{\gamma}$ is obtained from γ by smoothing a single vertex x . Without loss of generality let γ' be the result of the
 2149 first electrical move. There are two nontrivial cases to consider.

2150 First, suppose the move from γ to γ' does not involve the smoothed vertex x . Then we can apply the same
 2151 move to $\check{\gamma}$ to obtain a new multicurve $\check{\gamma}'$; the same multicurve can also be obtained from γ' by smoothing x .

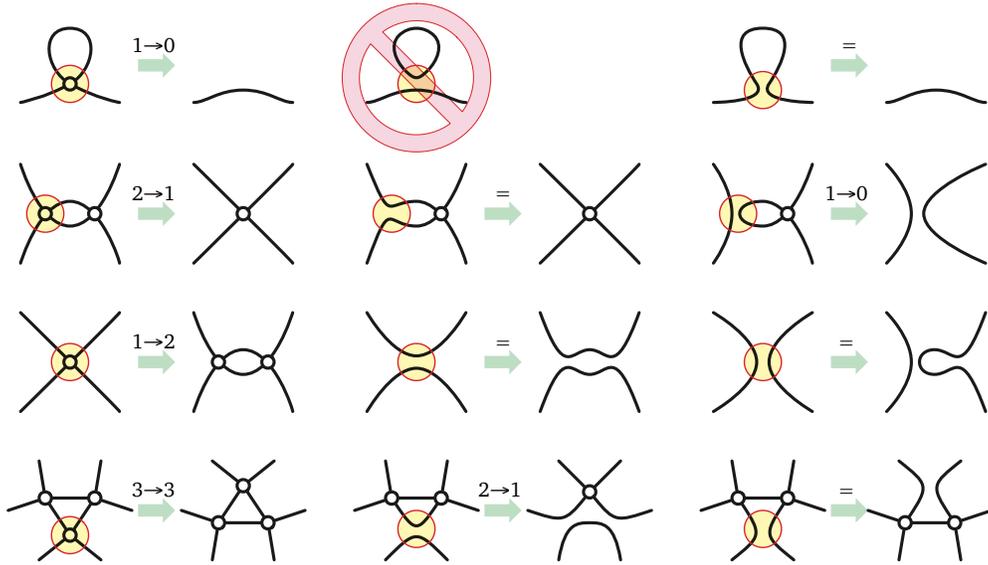


Figure 7.2. Cases for the proof of the Lemma 7.3; the circled vertex is x .

2152 Now suppose the first move does involve x . In this case, we can apply at most one electrical move to $\check{\gamma}$ to
 2153 obtain a (possibly trivial) smoothing $\check{\gamma}'$ of γ' . There are eight subcases to consider, shown in Figure 7.2. One
 2154 subcase for the $0 \rightarrow 1$ move is impossible, because $\check{\gamma}$ is connected. In the remaining $0 \rightarrow 1$ subcase and one $2 \rightarrow 1$
 2155 subcase, the curves $\check{\gamma}$, $\check{\gamma}'$, and γ' are all isomorphic. In all remaining subcases, $\check{\gamma}'$ is a connected proper smoothing
 2156 of γ' .

2157 Finally, we consider the more general case where $\check{\gamma}$ is obtained from γ by smoothing more than one vertex. Let $\tilde{\gamma}$
 2158 be any intermediate curve, obtained from γ by smoothing just one of the vertices that were smoothed to obtain $\check{\gamma}$.
 2159 As $\check{\gamma}$ is a connected smoothing of $\tilde{\gamma}$, the curve $\tilde{\gamma}$ itself must be connected too. Our earlier argument implies that
 2160 there is a sequence of electrical moves that changes $\tilde{\gamma}$ to a smoothing $\check{\gamma}'$ of γ' . The inductive hypothesis implies
 2161 that there is a sequence of electrical moves that changes $\check{\gamma}$ to a smoothing $\check{\gamma}'$ of $\check{\gamma}'$, which is itself a smoothing
 2162 of γ' . This completes the proof. \square

2163 As a remark, using a similar argument one can recover a result by Newmann-Coto [182]: any homotopy
 2164 from multicurve γ to another multicurve γ' that never removes vertices can be turned into a homotopy from a
 2165 smoothing of γ to a smoothing of γ' . Chambers and Liokumovich [40] studied a similar problem where one wants
 2166 to convert a homotopy between two *simple* curves on surface into an *isotopy*, without increasing the length of any
 2167 intermediate curve by too much. They showed that the desired isotopy can be obtained from a clever Euler-tour
 2168 argument on the graph of all possible complete smoothings of the intermediate curves.

2169 7.2.2 In the Plane

2170 The main result of this subsection is that the number of *homotopy* moves required to simplify a closed curve in
 2171 the plane is a lower bound on the number of *electrical moves* required to simplify the same closed curve. Our
 2172 result makes explicit the quantitative bound implicit in the work of Noble and Welsh [184], and most of our proofs
 2173 closely follow theirs.

2174 We also establish two other results on the fly—the function $X(\cdot)$ never increases under smoothings, and the
 2175 monotonicity of electrical moves—which are interesting in their own right. The fact that every planar curve can be
 2176 simplified using either electrical or homotopy moves makes the proofs in this subsection slightly easier comparing
 2177 to the annular case (see Section 7.2.3).

2178 **Lemma 7.4.** $X(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma)$ for every connected smoothing $\check{\gamma}$ of every connected multicurve γ in the plane.

2179 **Proof:** Let γ be a connected multicurve, and let $\check{\gamma}$ be a connected smoothing of γ . If γ is already simple, the
 2180 lemma is vacuously true. Otherwise, applying a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that simplifies γ . By
 2181 Lemma 7.3 there is another sequence of electrical moves of length at most $X(\gamma)$ that simplifies $\check{\gamma}$. We immediately
 2182 have $X(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma)$ and the lemma is proved. \square

2183 **Lemma 7.5.** For every connected multicurve γ , there is a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that
 2184 simplifies γ to a simple closed curve that does not contain $0 \rightarrow 1$ or $1 \rightarrow 2$ moves.

2185 **Proof:** Consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that simplifies an arbitrary connected multicurve γ
 2186 to a simple closed curve. For any integer $i \geq 0$, let γ_i denote the result of the first i moves in this sequence;
 2187 in particular, $\gamma_0 = \gamma$ and $\gamma_{X(\gamma)}$ is a simple closed curve. Minimality of the simplification sequence implies that
 2188 $X(\gamma_i) = X(\gamma) - i$ for all i ; in particular, $X(\gamma_i)$ decreases as i grows. Now let i be an arbitrary index such that γ_i
 2189 has one more vertex than γ_{i-1} . Then γ_{i-1} is a connected proper smoothing of γ_i , so Lemma 7.4 implies that
 2190 $X(\gamma_{i-1}) \leq X(\gamma_i)$, giving us a contradiction. \square

2191 **Lemma 7.6.** $X(\gamma) \geq H^\downarrow(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma)$ for every closed curve γ in the plane.

2192 **Proof:** The second inequality is straightforward. The proof of the first inequality proceeds by induction on $X(\gamma)$.

2193 Let γ be a closed curve. If $X(\gamma) = 0$, then γ is already simple, so $H^\downarrow(\gamma) = 0$. Otherwise, consider a minimum-
 2194 length sequence of electrical moves that simplifies γ to a simple closed curve. Lemma 7.5 implies that we can
 2195 assume that the first move in the sequence is neither $0 \rightarrow 1$ nor $1 \rightarrow 2$. If the first move is $1 \rightarrow 0$ or $3 \rightarrow 3$, the theorem
 2196 immediately follows by induction.

2197 The only interesting first move is $2 \rightarrow 1$. Let γ' be the result of this $2 \rightarrow 1$ move, and let γ° be the result of the
 2198 corresponding $2 \rightarrow 0$ move. The minimality of the sequence implies that $X(\gamma) = X(\gamma') + 1$, and we trivially have
 2199 $H^\downarrow(\gamma) \leq H^\downarrow(\gamma^\circ) + 1$. Because γ consists of *one* single curve, γ° is also a single curve and is therefore connected. The

2200 curve γ° is also a proper smoothing of γ' , so the Lemma 7.4 implies $X(\gamma^\circ) \leq X(\gamma') < X(\gamma)$. Finally, the inductive
 2201 hypothesis implies that $X(\gamma^\circ) \geq H^\perp(\gamma^\circ)$, and therefore

$$2202 \quad H^\perp(\gamma) - 1 \leq H^\perp(\gamma^\circ) \leq X(\gamma^\circ) \leq X(\gamma') = X(\gamma) - 1$$

2203 which completes the proof. □

2204 7.2.3 In the Annulus

2205 **Tight curves on the annulus.** To prove similar results in the annulus, first we have to prove Conjecture 7.1 for
 2206 annular multicurves. Recall that the *depth* of any annular multicurve γ is the minimum number of times a path
 2207 from one boundary to the other crosses γ . In many ways, depth can be viewed an unsigned version of winding
 2208 number. Just as the winding number around the boundaries is a complete homotopy invariant for curves in the
 2209 annulus, the depth turns out to be a complete invariant for electrical moves on the annular multicurve.

2210 **Lemma 7.7.** *Electrical moves do not change the depth of any connected multicurve in the annulus.*

2211 **Proof:** Let γ be a connected multicurve in the annulus. For any face of γ that could be deleted by a electrical
 2212 move, exhaustive case analysis implies that there is a shortest path in the dual of γ between the two boundary
 2213 faces of γ that avoids that face. □

2214 For any integer $d > 0$, let α_d denote the unique closed curve in the annulus with $d - 1$ vertices and winding
 2215 number d . Up to isotopy, this curve can be parametrized in the plane as

$$2216 \quad \alpha_d(\theta) := ((\cos(\theta) + 2) \cos(d\theta), (\cos(\theta) + 2) \sin(d\theta)).$$

2217 In the notation of Section 3.1.1, α_d is the *flat torus knot* $T(d, 1)$.

2218 **Lemma 7.8.** *For any integer $d > 0$, the curve α_d is both h-tight and e-tight.*

2219 **Proof:** Every connected multicurve in the annulus with either winding number d or depth d has at least $d + 1$
 2220 faces (including the faces containing the boundaries of the annulus) and therefore, by Euler's formula, has at least
 2221 $d - 1$ vertices. □

2222 **Lemma 7.9.** *If γ is an h-tight connected multicurve in the annulus, then $\gamma = \alpha_d$ for some integer d .*

2223 **Proof:** A multicurve in the annulus is h-tight if and only if its constituent curves are h-tight *and disjoint*. Thus,
 2224 any *connected* h-tight multicurve is actually a single closed curve. Any two curves in the annulus with the same
 2225 winding number are homotopic [142]. Finally, up to isotopy, α_d is the only closed curve in the annulus with
 2226 winding number d and $d - 1$ vertices [135, Lemma 1.12]. □

2227 The following corollaries are now immediate by Lemma 7.1.

2228 **Corollary 7.1.** *A connected multicurve γ in the annulus is e-tight if and only if $\gamma = \alpha_{\text{depth}(\gamma)}$; therefore, any
 2229 multicurve γ is e-tight if and only if γ is h-tight.*

2230 **Corollary 7.2.** *Let γ and γ' be two connected multicurves in the annulus. Then γ can be transformed into γ' by
 2231 electrical moves if and only if $\text{depth}(\gamma) = \text{depth}(\gamma')$.*

Equipped with the understanding of tight annular curves, we are ready to extend the results in Section 7.2.2 to the annulus.

Lemma 7.10. *For any connected smoothing $\check{\gamma}$ of any connected multicurve γ in the annulus, we have $X(\check{\gamma}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma)$.*

Proof: Let γ be an arbitrary connected multicurve in the annulus, and let $\check{\gamma}$ be an arbitrary connected smoothing of γ . Without loss of generality, we can assume that γ is non-simple, since otherwise the lemma is vacuous.

If γ is already e-tight, then $\gamma = \alpha_d$ for some integer $d \geq 2$ by Corollary 7.1. (The curves α_0 and α_1 are simple.) First, suppose $\check{\gamma}$ is a connected smoothing of γ obtained by smoothing a single vertex x . The smoothed curve $\check{\gamma}$ contains a single monogon if x is the innermost or outermost vertex of γ , or a single bigon otherwise. Applying one $1 \rightarrow 0$ or $2 \rightarrow 0$ move transforms $\check{\gamma}$ into the curve α_{d-2} , which is e-tight by Lemma 7.8. Thus we have $X(\check{\gamma}) = 1$ and $\text{depth}(\check{\gamma}) = d - 2$, which implies $X(\check{\gamma}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\check{\gamma}) = X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma)$. As for the general case when $\check{\gamma}$ is obtained from γ by smoothing more than one vertices, the statement follows from the previous case by induction on the number of smoothed vertices.

If γ is not e-tight, applying a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens γ into some curve γ' . By Lemma 7.3 there is another sequence of electrical moves of length at most $X(\gamma)$ that tightens $\check{\gamma}$ to some connected smoothing $\check{\gamma}'$ of γ' , which can be further tightened electrically to an e-tight curve using arguments in the previous paragraph because γ' is e-tight. This implies that $X(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2}(\text{depth}(\gamma') - \text{depth}(\check{\gamma}'))$. By Lemma 7.7, γ and γ' have the same depth, and $\check{\gamma}$ and $\check{\gamma}'$ have the same depth. Therefore $X(\check{\gamma}) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma)$ and the lemma is proved. \square

Lemma 7.11. *For every connected multicurve γ in the annulus, there is a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens γ to $\alpha_{\text{depth}(\gamma)}$ without $0 \rightarrow 1$ or $1 \rightarrow 2$ moves.*

Proof: Consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens an arbitrary connected multicurve γ in the annulus. For any integer $i \geq 0$, let γ_i denote the result of the first i moves in this sequence. Suppose γ_i has one more vertex than γ_{i-1} for some index i . Then γ_{i-1} is a connected proper smoothing of γ_i , and $\text{depth}(\gamma_i) = \text{depth}(\gamma_{i-1})$ by Lemma 7.7; so Lemma 7.10 implies that $X(\gamma_{i-1}) \leq X(\gamma_i)$, contradicting our assumption that the reduction sequence has minimum length. \square

Lemma 7.12. $X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma) \geq H^\perp(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma)$ for every closed curve γ in the annulus.

Proof: Again the second inequality is straightforward, as explained at the start of the section. Let γ be a closed curve in the annulus. If γ is already e-tight, then $X(\gamma) = H^\perp(\gamma) = 0$ by Lemma 7.1, so the lemma is trivial. Otherwise, consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens γ . By Lemma 7.11, we can assume that the first move in the sequence is neither $0 \rightarrow 1$ nor $1 \rightarrow 2$. If the first move is $1 \rightarrow 0$ or $3 \rightarrow 3$, the theorem immediately follows by induction on $X(\gamma)$, since by Lemma 7.7 neither of these moves changes the depth of the curve.

The only interesting first move is $2 \rightarrow 1$. Let γ' be the result of this $2 \rightarrow 1$ move, and let γ° be the result if we perform the $2 \rightarrow 0$ move on the same empty bigon instead. The minimality of the sequence implies $X(\gamma) = X(\gamma') + 1$, and we trivially have $H^\perp(\gamma) \leq H^\perp(\gamma^\circ) + 1$. Because γ is a single curve, γ° is also a single curve and therefore a connected proper smoothing of γ' . Thus, Lemma 7.7, Lemma 7.10, and induction on the number of vertices imply

$$X(\gamma) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma) = X(\gamma') + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma') + 1$$

2270
2271
2272
2273

$$\begin{aligned} &\geq X(\gamma^\circ) + \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma^\circ) + 1 \\ &\geq H^\perp(\gamma^\circ) + 1 \\ &\geq H^\perp(\gamma), \end{aligned}$$

2274

which completes the proof. □

2275

7.2.4 Towards Connection between Electrical and Monotonic Homotopy Moves

2276
2277
2278

In this subsection we discuss some attempts to establish a formal connection between electrical and monotonic homotopy moves. In particular, we formulate two versions of *smoothing conjecture* that imply both Conjecture 7.1 and the relation between functions X and H^\perp .

2279
2280
2281
2282

A closed curve γ is **primitive** if γ is not homotopic to a proper multiple of some other closed curve. A multicurve is **primitive** if all its constituent curves are primitive. We show equivalence between the following concepts on primitive multicurves. Let γ be a multicurve on an orientable surface Σ such that each constituent curve of γ is primitive. Define the **μ -function** as

2283

$$\mu(\gamma, \sigma) := \min_{\substack{\sigma' \sim \sigma \\ \sigma' \pitchfork \gamma}} \text{cr}(\gamma, \sigma'),$$

2284
2285
2286
2287

where $\text{cr}(\gamma, \sigma')$ is the number of crossing between γ and σ' , and the minimum is ranging over all closed curve σ' homotopic to the given closed curve σ on Σ , intersecting γ transversely.¹ Denote μ_γ as the single-variable function $\mu(\gamma, \cdot)$. The notion of μ -function is deeply related to the *representativity* or *facewidth* of a graph studied in topological graph theory [205, 208, 235]. The μ -function is invariant under electrical moves and isotopy of γ .

2288
2289
2290

The μ -function is a higher-genus analogue to the *depth* function defined in the annulus. The following result that μ is invariant under electrical moves can be found in Robertson and Vitray [208]; we sketch a proof for sake of completeness.

2291
2292

Lemma 7.13 (Robertson and Vitray [208, Proposition 14.4]). *Electrical moves do not change μ_γ for any multicurve γ on surface Σ .*

2293
2294

Proof: For any face of γ intersected by some closed curve σ that could be deleted after an electrical move, exhaustive case analysis implies that there is another closed curve σ' that avoids that face. □

2295
2296
2297
2298
2299
2300

Multicurve γ satisfies **simplicity conditions** [217] if (1) any lifting of γ_i in the universal cover $\hat{\Sigma}$ does not self-intersect for any constituent curve γ_i of γ , and (2) any distinct liftings of γ_i and γ_j in $\hat{\Sigma}$ intersect each other at most once for any pair of (possibly identical) constituent curves γ_i and γ_j of γ . Multicurve γ is **minimally crossing** [217, 219] if each constituent curve of γ has minimum number of self-intersections in its homotopy class, and every pair of constituent curves has minimum intersections with each other, in their own homotopy classes. In notation, one has

2301

$$\text{cr}(\gamma_i) = \min_{\gamma'_i \sim \gamma_i} \text{cr}(\gamma'_i) \quad \text{and} \quad \text{cr}(\gamma_i, \gamma_j) = \min_{\substack{\gamma'_i \sim \gamma_i \\ \gamma'_j \sim \gamma_j}} \text{cr}(\gamma'_i, \gamma'_j)$$

2302
2303

for all constituent curves γ_i and γ_j of γ ; $\text{cr}(\gamma_i)$ denotes the number of self-intersections of curve γ_i . Multicurve γ is **crossing-tight** [217, 219] if $\mu_\gamma \neq \mu_{\check{\gamma}}$ for any proper smoothing $\check{\gamma}$ of γ .

¹In Schrijver [219], the μ -function is defined with respect to the graph corresponding to γ through medial construction; the function defined here is denoted as μ' in his paper.

Our proof of equivalence relies on machineries developed extensively in the sequence of work by de Graaf and Schrijver [123, 124, 125, 216, 217, 218, 219] who did all the weight-lifting. However the original work does not address the problem of relating electrical and homotopy moves.

Theorem 7.1. *Let γ be a multicurve on an orientable surface whose constituent curves are all primitive. The following statements are equivalent: (1) Multicurve γ satisfies simplicity conditions, (2) γ is minimally crossing, (3) γ is crossing-tight, (4) γ is e-tight, and (5) γ is h-tight.*

Proof (sketch): (1) \Leftrightarrow (2) \Leftrightarrow (3): Schrijver [217, Proposition 12] showed that γ satisfies simplicity conditions if and only if γ is minimally crossing and each constituent curve is primitive. Later in the same paper [217, Theorem 5] he also showed that γ is minimally crossing and each constituent curve is primitive if and only if γ is crossing-tight. An alternative proof using the monotonicity of homotopy process can be found in de Graaf's thesis [122].

(3) \Rightarrow (4): In another paper Schrijver [219, Theorem 2] showed that two crossing-tight multicurves γ and γ' can be transformed into each other using only 3 \rightarrow 3 moves if (and only if) $\mu_\gamma = \mu_{\gamma'}$. This result implies that if multicurve γ is crossing-tight then γ is e-tight, as electrical moves preserves the μ -function by Lemma 7.13.

(4) \Rightarrow (5): Any e-tight multicurve must be h-tight by de Graaf and Schrijver [125] (see Lemma 7.1).

(5) \Rightarrow (3): If γ is h-tight and primitive, then by Hass and Scott [135, Lemma 3.4] multicurve γ satisfies simplicity conditions. To elaborate, assume for contradiction that γ violates the simplicity conditions. As γ is h-tight one can push each constituent curve of γ close to its unique geodesic on the surface without even decreases the number of vertices, similar to the algorithm of de Graaf and Schrijver [125]. Therefore all the intersections between lifts of constituent curves of γ remains after the push. The primitiveness of the curve γ guarantees that each lift of any constituent curve does not self-intersect, and two different lifts of the same constituent curve intersects at most once on $\hat{\Sigma}$. Between the lifts of two distinct geodesics there is at most one intersection in the universal cover, and thus the same holds for the lifts of two distinct constituent curves of γ .

This concludes the proof. □

Unfortunately Theorem 7.1 does not imply immediately a relation between number of electrical versus homotopy moves required to tighten a multicurve on surface, because primitive multicurves can have non-primitive smoothings. Still, one would hope that some forms of the smoothing lemma hold on general orientable surface, possibly with assumptions on the applicable smoothings.

Conjecture 7.2. *Let γ be any connected multicurve on surface Σ , and let $\check{\gamma}$ be a connected smoothing of γ , satisfying $\mu_{\check{\gamma}} = \mu_\gamma$. Then $X(\check{\gamma}) \leq X(\gamma)$ holds.*

Lemma 7.14. *Assume Conjecture 7.2 holds. For every connected multicurve γ , there is a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens γ and does not contain 0 \rightarrow 1 or 1 \rightarrow 2 moves.*

Proof: Consider a minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that reduces an arbitrary connected multicurve γ to a simple closed curve. For any integer $i \geq 0$, let γ_i denote the result of the first i moves in this sequence; in particular, $\gamma_0 = \gamma$ and $\gamma_{X(\gamma)}$ is a simple closed curve. Minimality of the reduction sequence implies that $X(\gamma_i) = X(\gamma) - i$ for all i ; in particular, $X(\gamma_i)$ strictly decreases as i increases. Now let i be an arbitrary index such that γ_i has one more vertex than γ_{i-1} after applying either a 0 \rightarrow 1 or 1 \rightarrow 2 move. Then γ_{i-1} is a connected proper smoothing of γ_i satisfying $\mu_{\gamma_i} = \mu_{\gamma_{i-1}}$; so Lemma 7.13 and Conjecture 7.2 imply that $X(\gamma_{i-1}) \leq X(\gamma_i)$, giving us a contradiction. □

2342 Using Lemma 7.14, we can show that the two different notions of tightness are indeed equivalent, thus proving
 2343 Conjecture 7.1.

2344 **Lemma 7.15.** *Conjecture 7.2 implies Conjecture 7.1.*

2345 **Proof:** The only if direction follows directly from Lemma 7.1. Conversely, suppose γ is not e-tight. Lemma 7.14
 2346 implies that γ can be tightened by a finite sequence of electrical moves that never increases the number of vertices.
 2347 In particular, some finite sequence of 3→3 moves to γ reveals either an empty monogon or an empty bigon. Thus,
 2348 γ is not h-tight. \square

2349 **Strong smoothing conjecture.** We don't have the result corresponding to Lemma 7.6 in general surfaces, because
 2350 that requires us to prove the following stronger version of the smoothing lemma.

2351 **Conjecture 7.3.** *Let γ be any connected multicurve on surface Σ , and let $\check{\gamma}$ be a connected smoothing of γ . Then*

$$2352 \quad X(\check{\gamma}) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\check{\gamma}}(\sigma) \leq X(\gamma) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma}(\sigma),$$

2353 *for some absolute constant C , where Γ_0 is some finite collection of simple curves on surface Σ .*

2354 It is immediate that Conjecture 7.3 implies Conjecture 7.2. Using the strong smoothing conjecture we can
 2355 prove the analogous result to Lemma 7.6.

2356 **Lemma 7.16.** *Assume Conjecture 7.3 holds, then $X(\gamma) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma}(\sigma) \geq H^{\downarrow}(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma)$ for any closed curve γ .*

2357 **Proof:** The second inequality is straightforward, as explained in the start of the section. Let γ be a closed curve.
 2358 If γ is e-tight, then γ is h-tight as well by Lemma 7.1 so the inequality trivially holds. Otherwise, consider a
 2359 minimum-length sequence of electrical moves that tightens γ . Conjecture 7.3 implies Conjecture 7.2, so by
 2360 Lemma 7.14 we can assume that the first move in the sequence is neither 0→1 nor 1→2. If the first move is 1→0
 2361 or 3→3, the theorem immediately follows by induction.

2362 The only interesting first move is 2→1. Let γ' be the result of this 2→1 move, and let γ° be the result of the
 2363 corresponding 2→0 homotopy move. The minimality of the sequence implies that $X(\gamma) = X(\gamma') + 1$, and we
 2364 trivially have $H(\gamma) \leq H(\gamma^{\circ}) + 1$. Because γ consists of one single curve, γ° is also a single curve and is therefore
 2365 connected. The curve γ° is also a proper smoothing of γ' . Thus, Lemma 7.13, Conjecture 7.3, and induction on
 2366 number of vertices imply

$$2367 \quad \begin{aligned} X(\gamma) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma}(\sigma) &= X(\gamma') + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma'}(\sigma) + 1 \\ &\geq X(\gamma^{\circ}) + C \cdot \sum_{\sigma \in \Gamma_0} \mu_{\gamma^{\circ}}(\sigma) + 1 \\ &\geq H(\gamma^{\circ}) + 1 \\ &\geq H(\gamma), \end{aligned}$$

2370
 2371
 2372 which completes the proof. \square

7.3 Lower Bounds on Electrical Transformations

7.3.1 Plane Graphs

Lemma 7.4 immediately implies the following corollary through the medial graph construction; we state the corollary explicitly as it generalizes the result of Truemper’s [242] that any minor of a ΔY -reducible plane graph is also ΔY -reducible.

Corollary 7.3. *For any connected plane graph G , reducing any connected proper minor of G to a single vertex requires strictly fewer facial electrical transformations than reducing G to a single vertex.*

Recall a plane graph G is *unicursal* if its medial graph G^\times is the image of a single closed curve.

Theorem 7.2. *For every connected plane graph G and every unicursal minor H of G , reducing G to a single vertex requires at least $\lfloor \text{defect}(H^\times) \rfloor / 2$ facial electrical transformations.*

Proof: Either H equals G , or Corollary 7.3 states that reducing a proper minor H of G to a single vertex requires strictly fewer facial electrical transformations than reducing G to a single vertex. Note that facial electrical transformations performed on H corresponds precisely to electrical moves performed on H^\times . Now because $\gamma := H^\times$ is unicursal, Lemma 4.1 and Lemma 7.6 implies that $X(\gamma) \geq H(\gamma) \geq \lfloor \text{defect}(\gamma) \rfloor / 2$. \square

We can also derive explicit lower bounds for the number of facial electrical transformations required to reduce any plane graph of treewidth t to a single vertex. For any positive integers p and q , we define two cylindrical grid graphs; see Figure 7.3.

- $C(p, q)$ is the Cartesian product of a cycle of length q and a path of length $p - 1$. If q is odd, then the medial graph of $C(p, q)$ is the flat torus knot $T(2p, q)$.
- $C'(p, q)$ is obtained by connecting a new vertex to the vertices of one of the q -gonal faces of $C(p, q)$, or equivalently, by contracting one of the q -gonal faces of $C(p + 1, q)$ to a single vertex. If q is even, then the medial graph of $C'(p, q)$ is the flat torus knot $T(2p + 1, q)$.

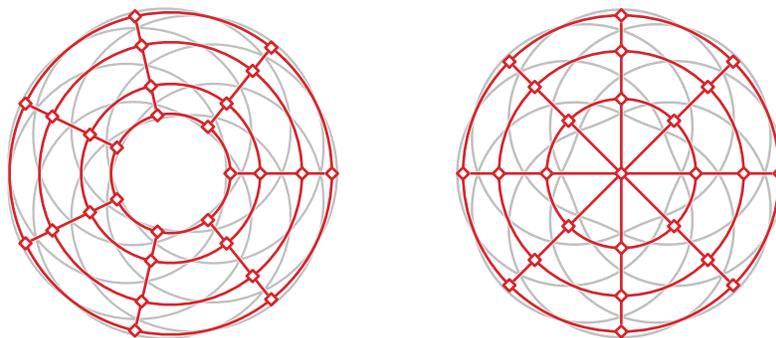


Figure 7.3. The cylindrical grid graphs $C(4, 7)$ and $C'(3, 8)$ and (in light gray) their medial graphs $T(8, 7)$ and $T(7, 8)$.

Corollary 7.4. *For all positive integers p and q , the cylindrical grid $C(p, q)$ requires $\Omega(\min\{p^2q, pq^2\})$ facial electrical transformations to reduce to a single vertex.*

2397 **Proof:** First suppose $p \leq q$. Because $C(p-1, q)$ is a minor of $C(p, q)$, we can assume without loss of generality
 2398 that p is even and $p < q$. Let H denote the cylindrical grid $C(p/2, ap+1)$, where $a := \lfloor (q-1)/p \rfloor \geq 1$. H is a
 2399 minor of $C(p, q)$ (because $ap+1 \leq q$), and the medial graph of H is the flat torus knot $T(p, ap+1)$. Lemma 3.1
 2400 implies

$$2401 \quad \text{defect}(T(p, ap+1)) = 2a \binom{p+1}{3} = \Omega(ap^3) = \Omega(p^2q).$$

2402 Theorem 7.2 now implies that reducing $C(p, q)$ requires at least $\Omega(p^2q)$ facial electrical transformations.

2403 The symmetric case $p > q$ is similar. We can assume without loss of generality that q is odd. Let H denote the
 2404 cylindrical grid $C'(aq, q)$, where $a := \lfloor (p-1)/q \rfloor \geq 1$. H is a proper minor of $C(p, q)$ (because $aq < p$), and the
 2405 medial graph of H is the flat torus knot $T(2aq+1, q)$. Corollary 3.1 implies

$$2406 \quad \left| \text{defect}(T(2aq+1, q)) \right| = 4a \binom{q}{3} = \Omega(aq^3) = \Omega(pq^2).$$

2407 Theorem 7.2 now implies that reducing $C(p, q)$ requires at least $\Omega(pq^2)$ facial electrical transformations. □

2408 In particular, reducing any $\Theta(\sqrt{n}) \times \Theta(\sqrt{n})$ cylindrical grid requires at least $\Omega(n^{3/2})$ facial electrical transfor-
 2409 mations. Our lower bound matches an $O(\min\{pq^2, p^2q\})$ upper bound by Nakahara and Takahashi [181]. Because
 2410 every $p \times q$ rectangular grid contains $C(\lfloor p/3 \rfloor, \lfloor q/3 \rfloor)$ as a minor, the same $\Omega(\min\{p^2q, pq^2\})$ lower bound applies
 2411 to rectangular grids. In particular, Truemper's $O(p^3) = O(n^{3/2})$ upper bound for the $p \times p$ square grid [242] is
 2412 tight. Finally, because every plane graph with treewidth t contains an $\Omega(t) \times \Omega(t)$ grid minor [207], reducing any
 2413 n -vertex plane graph with treewidth t requires at least $\Omega(t^3 + n)$ facial electrical transformations. Therefore, our
 2414 result answers the question by Gitler [115] and Archdeacon *et al.* [12] negatively.

2415 An interesting open question is to determine the asymptotically bound to reduce any plane graph of treewidth t .
 2416 We ambitiously conjecture that the correct answer is in fact $\Theta(nt)$. Of course proving this conjecture would be hard
 2417 because it implies the Feo-Provan conjecture that any plane graph can be reduced using $O(n^{3/2})$ facial electrical
 2418 transformations. However even a tight lower bound seems to be non-trivial as there are n -vertex planar graphs of
 2419 treewidth t that do not contain any $\Omega(n) \times \Omega(t)$ grid minors.

2420 **Conjecture 7.4.** *Any n -vertex plane graph of treewidth t can be reduced to a single vertex using $O(nt)$ facial*
 2421 *electrical transformations, and the bound is tight in the worst case.*

2422 7.3.2 Two-Terminal Plane Graphs

2423 Most applications of electrical reductions, starting with Kennelly's classical computation of effective resistance [155],
 2424 designate two vertices of the input graph as *terminals* and require a reduction to a single edge between those
 2425 terminals. In this context, electrical transformations that delete either of the terminals are forbidden: specifically,
 2426 leaf contractions when the leaf is a terminal, series reductions when the degree-2 vertex is a terminal, and $Y \rightarrow \Delta$
 2427 transformations when the degree-3 vertex is a terminal.

2428 Epifanov [85] was the first to prove that any 2-terminal planar graph can be reduced to a single edge
 2429 between the terminals using a finite number of electrical transformations, roughly 50 years after Steinitz proved
 2430 the corresponding result for planar graphs without terminals [230, 231]. Epifanov's proof is non-constructive;
 2431 algorithms for reducing 2-terminal planar graphs were later described by Feo [99], Truemper [242], and Feo and
 2432 Provan [100]. (An algorithm in the spirit of Steinitz's reduction proof can also be derived from results of de Graaf
 2433 and Schrijver [125].)

2434 An important subtlety that complicates both Epifanov’s proof and its algorithmic descendants is that not every
 2435 2-terminal planar graph can be reduced to a single edge using only *facial* electrical transformations. The simplest
 2436 bad example is the three-vertex graph shown in Figure 7.4; the solid vertices are the terminals. Although this
 2437 graph has more than one edge, it has no reducible leaves, empty loops, cycles of length 2 or 3, or vertices with
 2438 degree 2 or 3. We will soon see that this graph cannot be reduced to an edge even if we allow “backward” facial
 2439 electrical transformations that make the graph more complicated.

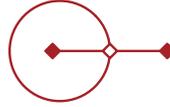


Figure 7.4. A facially irreducible 2-terminal plane graph.

2440 Existing algorithms for reducing an arbitrary 2-terminal plane graphs to a single edge rely on an additional
 2441 operation which we call a *terminal-leaf contraction*, in addition to facial electrical transformations. We discuss this
 2442 subtlety in more detail in Section 7.3.4.

2443 **Bullseyes.** The graph in Figure 7.4 is just one example of an infinite family of irreducible 2-terminal plane graphs.
 2444 For any $k > 0$, let B_k denote the 2-terminal plane graph that consists of a path of length k between the terminals,
 2445 with a loop attached to each of the $k - 1$ interior vertices, embedded so that collectively they form concentric
 2446 circles that separate the terminals. We call each graph B_k a *bullseye*. For example, B_1 is just a single edge; B_2 is
 2447 shown in Figure 7.4; and B_4 is shown on the left in Figure 7.5. The medial graph B_k^\times of the k th bullseye is the
 2448 curve α_{2k} , as we have seen in Section 7.2.3. Because different bullseyes have different medial depths, Lemma 7.7
 2449 implies that no bullseye can be transformed into any other bullseye by facial electrical transformations.

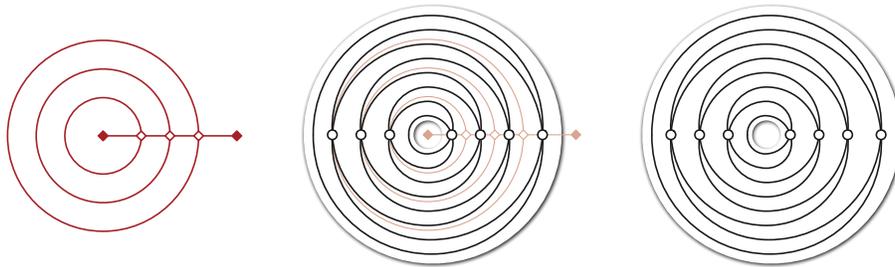


Figure 7.5. The bullseye graph B_4 and its medial graph α_8 .

2450 The following corollaries are now immediate from results in Section 7.2.3.

2451 **Corollary 7.5.** *Let G be an arbitrary 2-terminal plane graph. Graph G can be reduced to the bullseye B_k using a*
 2452 *finite sequence of facial electrical transformations if and only if $\text{depth}(G^\times) = 2k$.*

2453 **Corollary 7.6.** *Let G and H be arbitrary 2-terminal plane graphs. Graph G can be transformed to graph H using*
 2454 *a finite sequence of facial electrical transformations if and only if $\text{depth}(G^\times) = \text{depth}(H^\times)$.*

2455 **Theorem 7.3.** *Let G be an arbitrary 2-terminal plane graph, and let γ be any unicursal smoothing of G^\times . Reduc-*
 2456 *ing G to a bullseye requires at least $H(\gamma) - \frac{1}{2} \text{depth}(\gamma)$ facial electrical transformations.*

2457 In Section 4.3.2, we describe an infinite family of contractible curves in the annulus that require $\Omega(n^2)$ homotopy
 2458 moves to simplify. Because these curves are contractible, they have even depth, and thus are the medial graphs of

2459 2-terminal plane graphs. Euler’s formula implies that every n -vertex curve in the annulus has exactly $n + 2$ faces
 2460 (including the boundary faces) and therefore has depth at most $n + 1$.

2461 **Corollary 7.7.** *Reducing a 2-terminal plane graph to a bullseye requires $\Omega(n^2)$ facial electrical transformations in*
 2462 *the worst case.*

2463 7.3.3 Planar Electrical Transformations

2464 We extend our earlier $\Omega(n^{3/2})$ lower bound in Section 7.3.1 for reducing plane graphs *without* terminals using only
 2465 facial electrical transformations to the larger class of planar electrical transformations. Our extension to non-facial
 2466 electrical transformations is based on the following surprising observation, shown in Section 3.3: Although the
 2467 medial graph of G depends on its embedding, the *defect* of the medial graph of G does not.

2468 Each planar electrical transformation in a planar graph G induces the same change in the medial graph G^\times
 2469 as a finite sequence of 1- and 2-strand tangle flips (hereafter simply called “tangle flips”) followed by a single
 2470 electrical move. (See Section 3.3.2 for the definition of tangle flips.) For an arbitrary connected multicurve γ on
 2471 the sphere, let $\bar{X}(\gamma)$ denote the minimum number of electrical moves in a mixed sequence of electrical moves
 2472 and tangle flips that simplifies γ . Similarly, let $\bar{H}(\gamma)$ denote the minimum number of homotopy moves in a mixed
 2473 sequence of homotopy moves and tangle flips that simplifies γ . We emphasize that tangle flips are “free” and do
 2474 not contribute to either $\bar{X}(\gamma)$ or $\bar{H}(\gamma)$.

2475 Our lower bound on planar electrical moves follows our earlier lower bound proof for facial electrical moves
 2476 almost verbatim; the only subtlety is that the embedding of the graph can effectively change at every step of the
 2477 reduction. We repeat the arguments here to keep the presentation self-contained.

2478 **Lemma 7.17.** $\bar{X}(\check{\gamma}) \leq \bar{X}(\gamma)$ for every connected proper smoothing $\check{\gamma}$ of every connected multicurve γ on the
 2479 sphere.

2480 **Proof:** Let γ be a connected multicurve, and let $\check{\gamma}$ be a connected proper smoothing of γ . The proof proceeds by
 2481 induction on $\bar{X}(\gamma)$. If $\bar{X}(\gamma) = 0$, then γ is already simple, so the lemma is vacuously true.

2482 First, suppose $\check{\gamma}$ is obtained from γ by smoothing a single vertex x . Consider an optimal mixed sequence of
 2483 tangle flips and electrical moves that simplifies γ . This sequence starts with zero or more tangle flips, followed by
 2484 a electrical move. Let γ' be the multicurve that results from the initial sequence of tangle flips; by definition, we
 2485 have $\bar{X}(\gamma) = \bar{X}(\gamma')$. Moreover, applying the same sequence of tangle flips to $\check{\gamma}$ yields a connected multicurve $\check{\gamma}'$
 2486 such that $\bar{X}(\check{\gamma}) = \bar{X}(\check{\gamma}')$. Thus, we can assume without loss of generality that the first operation in the sequence is
 2487 a electrical move.

2488 Now let γ' be the result of this move; by definition, we have $\bar{X}(\gamma) = \bar{X}(\gamma') + 1$. As in the proof of Lemma
 2489 7.4, there are several subcases to consider, depending on whether the move from γ to γ' involves the smoothed
 2490 vertex x , and if so, the specific type of move; see Figure 7.2. In every subcase, by Lemma 7.3 we can apply at most
 2491 one electrical move to $\check{\gamma}$ to obtain a (possibly trivial) smoothing $\check{\gamma}'$ of γ' , and then apply the inductive hypothesis
 2492 on γ' and $\check{\gamma}'$ to prove the statement. We omit the straightforward details.

2493 Finally, if $\check{\gamma}$ is obtained from γ by smoothing more than one vertex, the lemma follows immediately by induction
 2494 from the previous analysis. □

2495 **Lemma 7.18.** *For every connected multicurve γ , there is an intermixed sequence of electrical moves and tangle*
 2496 *flips that simplifies γ to a simple closed curve, contains exactly $\bar{X}(\gamma)$ electrical moves, and does not contain $0 \rightarrow 1$*
 2497 *or $1 \rightarrow 2$ moves.*

2498 **Proof:** Consider an optimal sequence of electrical moves and tangle flips that simplifies γ , and let γ_i denote the
 2499 result of the first i moves in this sequence. If any γ_i has more vertices than its predecessor γ_{i-1} , then γ_{i-1} is a
 2500 connected proper smoothing of γ_i , and Lemma 7.17 implies a contradiction. \square

2501 **Lemma 7.19.** $\bar{X}(\gamma) \geq \bar{H}(\gamma)$ for every closed curve γ on the sphere.

2502 **Proof:** Let γ be a planar closed curve. The proof proceeds by induction on $\bar{X}(\gamma)$. If $\bar{X}(\gamma) = 0$, then γ is simple and
 2503 thus $\bar{H}(\gamma) = 0$, so assume otherwise.

2504 Consider an optimal sequence of electrical moves and tangle flips that simplifies γ , and let γ_i be the curve
 2505 obtained by applying a prefix of the sequence up to and including the first electrical move. The minimality of
 2506 the sequence implies that $\bar{X}(\gamma) = \bar{X}(\gamma') + 1$. By Lemma 7.18, we can assume without loss of generality that the
 2507 first electrical move in the sequence is neither $0 \rightarrow 1$ nor $1 \rightarrow 2$, and if this first electrical move is $1 \rightarrow 0$ or $3 \rightarrow 3$, the
 2508 theorem immediately follows by induction.

2509 The only remaining move to consider is $2 \rightarrow 1$. Let γ° denote the result of applying the same sequence of tangle
 2510 flips to γ , but replacing the final $2 \rightarrow 1$ move with a $2 \rightarrow 0$ move, or equivalently, smoothing the vertex of γ' left
 2511 by the final $2 \rightarrow 1$ move. We immediately have $\bar{H}(\gamma) \leq \bar{H}(\gamma^\circ) + 1$. Because γ° is a connected proper smoothing
 2512 of γ' , Lemma 7.17 implies $\bar{X}(\gamma^\circ) < \bar{X}(\gamma') = \bar{X}(\gamma) - 1$. Finally, the inductive hypothesis implies that $\bar{X}(\gamma^\circ) \geq \bar{H}(\gamma^\circ)$,
 2513 which completes the proof. \square

2514 **Lemma 7.20.** $\bar{H}(\gamma) \geq |\text{defect}(\gamma)|/2$ for every closed curve γ on the sphere.

2515 **Proof:** Each homotopy move decreases $|\text{defect}(\gamma)|$ by at most 2, and Lemmas 3.13 and 3.14 imply that tangle flips
 2516 do not change $|\text{defect}(\gamma)|$ at all. Every simple curve has defect 0. \square

2517 **Theorem 7.4.** Let G be an arbitrary planar graph, and let γ be any unicursal smoothing of G^\times (defined with
 2518 respect to any planar embedding of G). Reducing G to a single vertex requires at least $|\text{defect}(\gamma)|/2$ planar electrical
 2519 transformations.

2520 **Proof:** The minimum number of planar electrical transformations required to reduce G is at least $\bar{X}(G^\times)$. Because γ
 2521 is a single curve, it must be connected, so Lemma 7.17 implies that $\bar{X}(G^\times) \geq \bar{X}(\gamma)$. The theorem now follows
 2522 immediately from Lemmas 7.19 and 7.20. \square

2523 The following corollary is now immediate from either Lemma 3.1, Lemma 3.2, or Corollary 3.1.

2524 **Corollary 7.8.** Reducing any n -vertex planar graph to a single vertex requires $\Omega(n^{3/2})$ planar electrical transfor-
 2525 mations in the worst case.

2526 7.3.4 Terminal-Leaf Contractions

2527 The electrical reduction algorithms of Feo [99], Truemper [242], and Feo and Provan [100] rely exclusively on
 2528 facial electrical transformations, plus one additional operation.

- 2529 • *Terminal-leaf contraction:* Contract the edge incident to a *terminal* vertex with degree 1. The neighbor of the
 2530 deleted terminal becomes a new terminal.

2531 Terminal-leaf contractions are also called *FP-assignments*, after Feo and Provan [76, 115, 116]. Later algorithms for
 2532 reducing plane graphs with three or four terminals [12, 76, 116] also use only facial electrical transformations and
 2533 terminal-leaf contractions.

2534 Formally, terminal-leaf contractions are *not* electrical transformations, as they can change the target value one
2535 wants to compute in application. For example, if the edges in the graph shown in Figure 7.4 represent 1Ω resistors,
2536 a terminal-leaf contraction changes the effective resistance between the terminals from 2Ω to 1Ω . However,
2537 both Gilter [115] and Feo and Provan [100] observed that any sequence of facial electrical transformations
2538 and terminal-leaf contractions can be simulated on the fly by a sequence of *planar* electrical transformations.
2539 Specifically, we simulate the first leaf contraction at either terminal by simply marking that terminal and proceeding
2540 as if its unique neighbor were a terminal. Later electrical transformations involving the neighbor of a marked
2541 terminal may no longer be facial, but they will still be planar; terminal-leaf contractions at the unique neighbor of
2542 a marked terminal become series reductions. At the end of the sequence of transformations, we perform a final
2543 series reduction at the unique neighbor of each marked terminal.

2544 Unfortunately, terminal-leaf contractions change both the depth of the medial graph and the curve invariants
2545 that imply the quadratic homotopy lower bound. As a result, our quadratic lower bound proof breaks down if
2546 we allow terminal-leaf contractions. Indeed, we conjecture that any 2-terminal plane graph can be reduced to a
2547 single edge using only $O(n^{3/2})$ facial electrical transformations and terminal-leaf contractions, matching the lower
2548 bound proved in Section 7.3.3. (See Section 8.1.)

Chapter 8

Conclusions and Open Problems

Qui rogat, non errat.

— Latin proverb

Let us conclude the thesis with a list of conjectures along with some discussion.

8.1 Feo-Provan Conjecture

Perhaps the most compelling, and the primary motivation for our work, is to decide whether $\Theta(n^2)$ is indeed the best possible bound on the number of electrical transformations required to reduce any planar graph without terminals to a single vertex. Like Feo and Provan [100], Gitler [115], and Archdeacon *et al.* [12], we conjecture that $O(n^{3/2})$ facial electrical transformations suffice. However, perhaps we are less certain in light of the quadratic lower bound on reducing 2-terminal plane graphs from Section 7.3.2. Similarly, it is an open question whether any 2-terminal plane graph can be reduced to a single edge using $O(n^{3/2})$ facial electrical transformations and terminal-leaf contractions, as mentioned in Section 7.3.4. Proving these conjectures appears to be challenging.

Conjecture 8.1. *Any n -vertex plane graph can be reduced to a single vertex using at most $O(n^{3/2})$ facial electrical transformations. Any n -vertex plane graph with two terminals can be reduced to an edge using at most $O(n^{3/2})$ facial electrical transformations and terminal-leaf contractions.*

Once we go beyond facial and planar electrical transformations, none of our lower bound techniques apply, and we do not have any results about non-planar electrical transformations or electrical reduction of non-planar graphs. Indeed, the only lower bound known in the most general setting, for *any* family of electrically reducible graphs, is the trivial $\Omega(n)$. It seems unlikely that planar graphs can be reduced more quickly by using non-planar electrical transformations, but we can't prove anything. Any non-trivial lower bound for this problem would be interesting.

One way to prove the Feo-Provan conjecture is to extend Theorem 5.1 to the medial electrical setting. To do so it is sufficient to provide a way to tighten any tangle of depth $O(\sqrt{n})$ using $O(n^{3/2})$ electrical moves, similar to Lemma 5.1. One subtle difference between the two types of local operations is that a $2 \rightarrow 1$ move cannot be realized by homotopy of curves, and therefore the strategy for proving Lemma 5.1 and Lemma 5.1 by contracting monogons and tightening strands no longer works. Lemma 5.1 can be substituted by the algorithm of Feo and Provan [100] because the input is a closed curve; however as we are about to see, their algorithm does not work on tangles.

2575 8.1.1 Feo-Provan’s Algorithm

2576 Call an electrical or a homotopy move *positive* if it decreases the sum of the face depths; in particular, every $1 \rightarrow 0$,
2577 $2 \rightarrow 0$, and $2 \rightarrow 1$ move is positive. A key technical lemma of Feo and Provan implies that every non-simple curve in
2578 the plane admits a positive homotopy move [100, Theorem 1]. Therefore, Feo and Provan’s algorithm requires at
2579 most $O(D\Sigma)$ moves, where $D\Sigma$ is the sum of face depths of the input curve. Euler’s formula implies that every curve
2580 with n crossings has $O(n)$ faces, and each of these faces has depth $O(n)$ in the worst case. Thus, the quadratic
2581 upper bound on simplifying planar curves using homotopy moves follows from algorithm of Feo and Provan as
2582 well.

2583 One major benefit to view Feo and Provan’s algorithm through the lens of medial construction is that the
2584 consistency of labeling scheme comes for free once we interpret the labels as depths of the faces in the medial
2585 graph. Unfortunately, all the existing proofs of positive-move lemma [100, 189] are quite long and complicated.
2586 Indeed, like we mentioned in Section 5.1.2, there are infinite classes of loose tangles that do not admit an positive
2587 moves. This suggests that any proof to the lemma needs to utilize the fact that the given (multi-)curve is indeed
2588 closed in the plane. On top of that, the proof by Feo and Provan is presented at the graph level which complicates
2589 the presentation. Here we raise the question in search of a better proof using the language of (multi-)curves.

2590 Gitler [115] conjectured that a variant of Feo and Provan’s algorithm that always makes the *deepest* positive
2591 move requires only $O(n^{3/2})$ moves. This conjecture is supported by the empirical results of Feo [99, Chapter 6].
2592 Song [226] observed that if Feo and Provan’s algorithm always chooses the *shallowest* positive move, it can be
2593 forced to make $\Omega(n^2)$ moves even when the input curve can be simplified using only $O(n)$ moves.

2594 8.1.2 Steinitz’s Algorithm

2595 Another possible approach is an efficient implementation of Steinitz’s bigon removal algorithm. In general removing
2596 a minimal bigon takes $\Theta(n)$ steps, so only a quadratic upper bound follows on tightening an arbitrary tangle.

2597 It is natural to ask whether Steinitz’s algorithm can be improved, either by carefully choosing which bigon
2598 to remove in each stage, by more carefully choosing how to empty each bigon, and/or by more refined analysis.
2599 (It is not hard to show that Steinitz’s algorithm can be forced to perform $\Omega(n^2)$ moves if the bigons are chosen
2600 adversarially.) For example, one might repeatedly reduce the bigon containing the smallest number of faces. As
2601 we will see in Section 8.1.3, we cannot always hope for a bigon with sublinear number of faces inside. However,
2602 we can prove that a bigon with small *perimeter* does always exist.

2603 As electrical moves in general do not preserve the number of strands of a multicurve or a tangle, we need
2604 to generalize the definition of tangle in this situation. In this subsection a **tangle** is a collection of boundary-to-
2605 boundary paths $\gamma_1, \gamma_2, \dots, \gamma_s$ and a collection of *closed curves* $\kappa_1, \kappa_2, \dots, \kappa_t$ in a closed topological disk Σ , which
2606 (self-)intersect only pairwise, transversely, and away from the boundary of Σ . We call each individual path γ_i an
2607 **open strand** and each closed curve κ_j a **closed strand**; collectively we refer to them as **strands**. A closed strand κ
2608 is **lingering** if κ does not intersect any other strands in the tangle. Throughout the subsection we assume that our
2609 tangle does not have lingering closed strands. A tangle is **tight** if every strand is simple, every pair of open strands
2610 intersects at most once, and otherwise all strands are disjoint; otherwise the tangle is **loose**.

2611 Let Θ be a tangle and let β be a bigon in the tangle. Let $\#on(\beta)$ denote the number of intersections between
2612 the tangle and the boundary of an ε -neighborhood of the bigon β , for some small enough ε such that the boundary
2613 of ε -neighborhood only intersects the two curves that forms the bigon and the extension of the strands of the
2614 bigon. Also let $\#in(\beta)$ denote the number of vertices inside the ε -neighborhood of bigon β .

2615 **Lemma 8.1.** *Let n be a fixed integer. Let Θ be any loose tangle with at most n vertices, at most $3\sqrt{n}$ open*
 2616 *strands, and no lingering closed strands. Then there is either an empty monogon in Θ , or a minimal bigon β with*
 2617 *$\#on(\beta) \leq 8\sqrt{n}$.¹*

2618 **Proof:** Let the *length* of a (not necessarily simple) subpath η of a planar curve γ , denoted $|\eta|$, defined to be the
 2619 number of *vertices* of γ on η (counted with multiplicity). We will prove the statement by induction on the number
 2620 of vertices inside the tangle. First we argue that whenever we found a monogon of length at most $4\sqrt{n}$ then
 2621 we are done. Because in this case either the monogon is empty, or we can apply the lemma recursively on an
 2622 ε -neighborhood of the monogon excluding the double point (as a tangle of at most $3\sqrt{n}$ open strands); such a
 2623 tangle cannot be tight.

2624 Consider the following three cases. First, if all strands of tangle Θ has length at most $4\sqrt{n}$, the any minimal
 2625 bigon in Θ will have $\#on(\beta) \leq 8\sqrt{n}$.

2626 The second case is when there is a closed strand κ of length less than $4\sqrt{n}$. Now either there is a monogon
 2627 formed by κ and we are done, or κ is simple. Since all the closed strands are not lingering, there must be another
 2628 strand of Θ intersecting κ at least twice. In this case we recurse on the interior tangle Θ' formed by curve κ . If Θ'
 2629 is not tight then we are done. If Θ' is tight, let n' denote the number of vertices in Θ' and s' denote the number of
 2630 strands of Θ' . As all the strands of Θ' intersects each other at most once, we have $n' \leq \binom{s'}{2}$ and there is a strand η
 2631 of Θ' satisfying

$$2632 \quad |\eta| \leq \frac{2n'}{s'} \leq \frac{2}{s'} \cdot \frac{s'(s'-1)}{2} = s' - 1 \leq 2\sqrt{n},$$

2633 as the length of κ is at most $4\sqrt{n}$. Again if η has a monogon then we are done. Otherwise, either the tangle Θ'' is
 2634 tight thus the bigon is minimal, or we can recurse on the tangle Θ'' formed by an ε -neighborhood of the bigon σ
 2635 formed by κ and η excluding the two double points, which has at most $(2+2)\sqrt{n}/2 \leq 3\sqrt{n}$ open strands (since
 2636 $|\kappa| \leq 4\sqrt{n}$ and η separates κ into two arcs, one of the arcs has length at most $2\sqrt{n}$). In either case the statement
 2637 is proved.

2638 The third case is when all closed strands in Θ has length at least $4\sqrt{n}$ (there might be no closed strands at all),
 2639 and one of the (open or closed) strands α in Θ has length at least $4\sqrt{n}$. As all the closed strands in Θ has length at
 2640 least $4\sqrt{n}$, there are at most $0.5\sqrt{n}$ closed strands in Θ . Take an arbitrary subpath of α of length $4\sqrt{n}$ and call it
 2641 η . We refer to $\alpha \setminus \eta$ as a *semi-strand* of Θ . Now either there is an monogon in η of length at most $4\sqrt{n}$ (in which
 2642 case we are done); or η is a simple curve and there is another (semi-)strand of Θ that intersects η with at least
 2643 two vertices by pigeonhole principle, as there are in total at most $(3+0.5)\sqrt{n}$ strands in Θ , either open or closed.

2644 Now one can prove that there must be a (semi-)strand λ of Θ such that

$$2645 \quad |\lambda \cap \eta| \geq \frac{|\lambda|}{\sqrt{n}-1} + 1.$$

2646 Assume the contrary, we consider the sum over all (semi-)strands of Θ :

$$2647 \quad |\eta| = \sum_{\lambda} |\lambda \cap \eta| \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}-1} \sum_{\lambda} |\lambda|$$

$$2648 \quad \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}-1} (2n - 4\sqrt{n})$$

$$2649 \quad \leq 2\sqrt{n},$$

¹The constants here are not optimal. In general, an upper bound $c\sqrt{n}$ on the number of open strands for some constant $c \geq \frac{4}{\sqrt{6}}$ will imply $\#on(\beta) \leq (c + (c^2 + 8)^{1/2})\sqrt{n} \leq (2c + \frac{4}{c})\sqrt{n}$ for some minimal bigon β .

2651 which is a contradiction as $|\eta| = 4\sqrt{n}$.

2652 Take two points x and y on $\lambda \cap \eta$, such that a subpath λ' of λ from x to y (including both endpoints) has
 2653 length at most

$$2654 \left\lfloor \frac{|\lambda| - 1}{|\lambda \cap \eta| - 1} \right\rfloor + 1 \leq \sqrt{n}.$$

2655 (The assumption that $|\lambda \cap \eta| > 1$ is from the pigeonhole principle.) If λ' contains a monogon then we are done.
 2656 Otherwise λ' is simple and there is a *quasi-bigon* formed by λ' and η . As η has length $4\sqrt{n}$, we again apply the
 2657 lemma recursively on an ε -neighborhood of such a quasi-bigon excluding the two double points, as a tangle of at
 2658 most $(4 + 1)\sqrt{n}/2 \leq 3\sqrt{n}$ open strands. □

2659 8.1.3 Curves where All Bigons are Large

2660 Now we introduce an infinite family of multicurves built on Fibonacci lattices, which we call *Fibonacci cubes*, in
 2661 which every bigon and monogon contains $\Omega(n)$ faces. Prior work and applications on Fibonacci lattice include
 2662 discrepancy and numerical integration [261, 262]; image processing and memory layout [58, 59, 101, 102]; data
 2663 structures and lower bounds [26, 158].

2664 For each integer k , the k th *Fibonacci cube* \mathcal{F}_k is constructed from six identical tilted square lattices on the
 2665 faces of a cube. Specifically, let \mathcal{L} denote the dual of the standard integer lattice, with vertices $(x + 1/2, y + 1/2)$
 2666 for all integers x and y , and with edges between horizontal and vertical neighbors. Let \mathcal{L}_k denote the two-
 2667 dimensional Fibonacci lattice generated by the orthogonal integer vectors (F_{k-1}, F_k) and $(F_k, -F_{k-1})$. Each face of
 2668 \mathcal{F}_k contains the restriction of \mathcal{L} with the square induced by lattice \mathcal{L}_k with vertices $(0, 0)$, (F_{k-1}, F_k) , $(F_k, -F_{k-1})$,
 2669 and (F_{k+1}, F_{k-2}) , where F_i denotes the i th Fibonacci number. The graph \mathcal{F}_k has exactly $n_k := 6 \cdot F_{2k-1}$ vertices and
 2670 thus exactly $6 \cdot F_{2k-1} + 2$ faces.

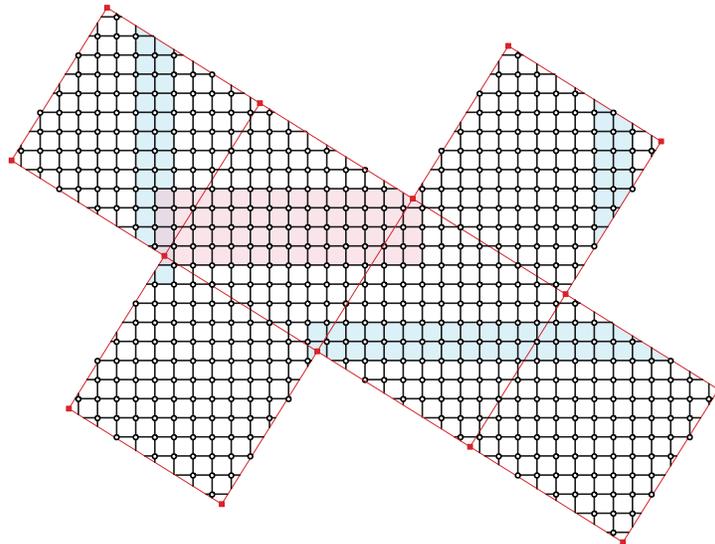


Figure 8.1. An unfolded Fibonacci cube \mathcal{F}_6 with two minimal bigons shaded.

2671 Discrete Gauss-Bonnet theorem implies that every bigon in \mathcal{F}_k contains exactly two triangular faces, which
 2672 must lie on the boundary by Steinitz lemma on minimal bigons (see the proof of Lemma 2.1). Any minimal bigon—
 2673 unfolded into the plane—looks like a rectangle with two opposite corners clipped off (to make the triangular
 2674 faces). The other two opposite corners of the rectangle are the vertices of the bigon. Thus, the number of vertices

2675 in the interior of any minimal bigon is equal to the area of an axis-aligned rectangle in the plane with two opposite
2676 corners in the Fibonacci lattice \mathcal{L}_k . (See Figure 8.1.)

2677 We use the following elementary but crucial discrepancy property of the Fibonacci lattice [58, Lemma 7] [59,
2678 Lemma 5].

2679 **Lemma 8.2.** *Any axis-aligned rectangle containing more than one point of the Fibonacci lattice \mathcal{L}_k has area at
2680 least $(F_{k-1} + 1)(F_k + 1) \geq F_{2k-1}/\sqrt{5} \geq n_k/(6\sqrt{5})$.*

2681 **Theorem 8.1.** *Every bigon in \mathcal{F}_k contains $\Theta(n_k)$ vertices and therefore $\Theta(n_k)$ faces.*

2682 Erickson [90] conjectured that any Fibonacci cube \mathcal{F}_k has a constant number of constituent curves, and any
2683 constituent curve γ of \mathcal{F}_k (which is a single closed curve) satisfies the following property: each face of γ is the
2684 union of a constant number of faces of \mathcal{F}_k , and the number of vertices of γ is a constant fraction of n_k . This implies
2685 that any bigon in γ contains a constant fraction of the faces of γ , and therefore also have linear size.

2686 8.2 Homotopy Moves on Low-genus Surfaces

2687 As we have seen in Section 4.3, Theorem 4.6 implies an $\Omega(n^2)$ lower bound for tightening curves on any surface
2688 except for the sphere, the disk, and the projective plane. Our result in Section 5.1 shows that any planar curve
2689 and can be simplified in $O(n^{3/2})$ moves. Now two cases remain.

2690 8.2.1 Tangles

2691 If we only consider closed curves on the disk, this is no different than the planar case as our tightening algorithm
2692 does not make use of homotopy moves performed on the infinite face. (Although it is not hard to construct
2693 examples where the optimal number of moves required depends on whether the curve lies in the sphere or the
2694 disk.)

2695 In many ways, tangles can be view as curve systems on the disk. (In general, when one talks about curves
2696 on surface without boundary, it makes sense to include all the boundary-to-boundary paths.) Our algorithm for
2697 simplifying planar curves (Theorem 5.1) generalizes directly to tangles; besides some minor details (say one
2698 should remove all the strands without intersections ahead of time), the only missing part is the lemma that proves
2699 the existence of useful cycles in tangles, analogous to Lemma 3.10. If one looks closely at the proof, there are
2700 no places where we use the assumption that the outermost contour contains the whole curve. Therefore we
2701 summarize the result without repeating its proof.

2702 **Theorem 8.2.** *Every n -vertex tangle can be tightened in $O(n^{3/2})$ homotopy moves.*

2703 If in addition we want to enforce monotonicity by disallowing $0 \rightarrow 2$ moves, the problem becomes open. In light
2704 of the close relation between electrical reduction and monotonic homotopy reduction process we have seen in
2705 Section 6.4, we believe that proving the following conjecture is as hard as its electrical counterpart, the Feo-Provan
2706 conjecture (see Section 8.1).

2707 **Conjecture 8.2.** *Any n -vertex tangle can be tightened monotonically using $O(n^{3/2})$ homotopy moves.*

2708

8.2.2 Projective Plane

2709

The only missing case is the projective plane. Using the fact that the oriented double-cover of the projective plane is the sphere, an argument similar to the proof of Theorem 4.6 implies an $\Omega(n^{3/2})$ lower bound on homotopy moves, by plugging in the lower bound for the planar case (Theorem 4.1).

2711

2712

We left the task of finding a matching upper bound as an open question to the readers. One would expect a solution follows from extending the useful cycle technique to the projective planar setting.

2713

2714

Conjecture 8.3. *Any curves on the projective plane can be tightened using at most $O(n^{3/2})$ homotopy moves.*

2715

8.3 Monotonic Homotopy Moves on Arbitrary Surfaces

2716

Finally, in light of Theorem 6.2 and Lemma 6.10, we conjecture that any multicurve on an arbitrary surface can be tightened monotonically using polynomially many homotopy moves. This conjecture, if true, will generalize both Theorem 6.2 and Conjecture 6.1.

2717

2718

2719

Conjecture 8.4. *Any multicurve on an arbitrary surface can be tightened monotonically using polynomially many homotopy moves.*

2720

References

- 2721 [1] Colin Adams. Triple crossing number of knots and links. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 22(2):1350006 (17 pages),
2722 2013. arXiv:1207.7332.
- 2723 [2] Colin Adams, Thomas Crawford, Benjamin DeMeo, Michael Landry, Alex Tong Lin, MurphyKate Montee,
2724 Seojung Park, Saraswathi Venkatesh, and Farrah Yhee. Knot projections with a single multi-crossing. *J.*
2725 *Knot Theory Ramif.* 24(3):1550011 (30 pages), 2015. arXiv:1208.5742.
- 2726 [3] Virgil W. Adkisson. Cyclicly connected continuous curves whose complementary domain boundaries are
2727 homeomorphic, preserving branch points. *C. R. Séances Soc. Sci. Lett. Varsovie III* 23:164–193, 1930.
- 2728 [4] Francesca Aicardi. Tree-like curves. *Singularities and Bifurcations*, 1–31, 1994. Advances in Soviet Mathe-
2729 matics 21, Amer. Math. Soc.
- 2730 [5] Sheldon B. Akers, Jr. The use of wye-delta transformations in network simplification. *Oper. Res.* 8(3):311–
2731 323, 1960.
- 2732 [6] James W. Alexander. Combinatorial analysis situs. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 28(2):301–326, 1926.
- 2733 [7] James W. Alexander and G. B. Briggs. On types of knotted curves. *Ann. Math.* 28(1/4):562–586, 1926–1927.
- 2734 [8] Sarah R. Allen, Luis Barba, John Iacono, and Stefan Langerman. Incremental Voronoi diagrams. *Proc.*
2735 *32nd Int. Symp. Comput. Geom.*, 15:1–15:16, 2016. Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics 51.
2736 (<http://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2016/5907>). arXiv:1603.08485.
- 2737 [9] Sigurd Angenent. Parabolic equations for curves on surfaces: Part II. Intersections, blow-up and generalized
2738 solutions. *Ann. Math.* 133(1):171–215, 1991.
- 2739 [10] Tom M. Apostol. *Modular Functions and Dirichlet Series in Number Theory*, 2nd edition. Graduate Texts in
2740 Mathematics 41. Springer-Verlag, 1990.
- 2741 [11] Hideyo Arakawa and Tetsuya Ozawa. A generalization of Arnold’s strangeness invariant. *J. Knot Theory*
2742 *Ramif.* 8(5):551–567, 1999.
- 2743 [12] Dan Archdeacon, Charles J. Colbourn, Isidoro Gitler, and J. Scott Provan. Four-terminal reducibility and
2744 projective-planar wye-delta-wye-reducible graphs. *J. Graph Theory* 33(2):83–93, 2000.
- 2745 [13] Chris Arettines. A combinatorial algorithm for visualizing representatives with minimal self-intersection. *J.*
2746 *Knot Theory Ramif.* 24(11):1550058–1–1550058–17, 2015. arXiv:1101.5658.
- 2747 [14] Stefan Arnborg, Andrzej Proskurowski, and Derek G. Corneil. Forbidden minors characterization of partial
2748 3-trees. *Discrete Math.* 810:1–19, 1990.
- 2749 [15] Vladimir I. Arnold. Plane curves, their invariants, perestroikas and classifications. *Singularities and*
2750 *Bifurcations*, 33–91, 1994. Adv. Soviet Math. 21, Amer. Math. Soc.
- 2751 [16] Vladimir I. Arnold. *Topological Invariants of Plane Curves and Caustics*. University Lecture Series 5. Amer.
2752 Math. Soc., 1994.

- 2753 [17] Eric K. Babson and Clara S. Chan. Counting faces of cubical spheres modulo two. *Discrete Math.* 212(3):169–
2754 183, 2000. arXiv:9811085v1.
- 2755 [18] Thomas Banchoff. Critical points and curvature for embedded polyhedra. *J. Diff. Geom.* 1:245–256, 1967.
- 2756 [19] Dror Bar-Natan. On the Vassiliev knot invariants. *Topology* 34:423–472, 1996.
- 2757 [20] Ara Basmajian, Hugo Parlier, and Juan Souto. Geometric filling curves on surfaces. *Bulletin of the London*
2758 *Mathematical Society* 49(4):660–669. Wiley Online Library, 2017.
- 2759 [21] Edward A. Bender and E. Rodney Canfield. The asymptotic number of rooted maps on a surface. *J. Comb.*
2760 *Theory Ser. A* 43(2):244–257, 1986.
- 2761 [22] Mark de Berg, Otfried Cheong, Marc van Kreveld, and Mark Overmars. *Computational Geometry: Algorithms*
2762 *and Applications*, 3rd edition. Springer-Verlag, 2008.
- 2763 [23] Sergei Bespamyatnikh. Computing homotopic shortest paths in the plane. *J. Algorithms* 49(2):284–303,
2764 2003.
- 2765 [24] Joan S. Birman and Xiao-Song Lin. Knot polynomials and Vassiliev’s invariants. *Invent. Math.* 111:225–270,
2766 1993.
- 2767 [25] Henry R. Brahana. Systems of circuits on two-dimensional manifolds. *Ann. Math.* 23(2):144–168, 1922.
- 2768 [26] Gerth Stølting Brodal, Pooya Davoodi, Moshe Lewenstein, Rajeev Raman, and Satti Srinivasa Rao. Two
2769 dimensional range minimum queries and Fibonacci lattices. *Proc. 20th Ann. European Symp. Algorithms*,
2770 217–228, 2012. Lecture Notes Comput. Sci. 7501, Springer.
- 2771 [27] Gerhard Burde and Neiherr Zieschang. *Knots*, 2nd revised and extended edition. de Gruyter Studies in
2772 Mathematics 5. Walter de Gruyter, 2003.
- 2773 [28] Benjamin Burton, Erin Chambers, Marc van Kreveld, Wouter Meulemans, Tim Ophelders, and Bettina
2774 Speckmann. Computing optimal homotopies over a spiked plane with polygonal boundary. *LIPICs-Leibniz*
2775 *International Proceedings in Informatics*, vol. 87, 2017.
- 2776 [29] Sergio Cabello, Matt DeVos, Jeff Erickson, and Bojan Mohar. Finding one tight cycle. *Proc. 19th Ann.*
2777 *ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 527–531, 2008.
- 2778 [30] Sergio Cabello, Yuanxin Liu, Andrea Mantler, and Jack Snoeyink. Testing homotopy for paths in the plane.
2779 *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 31:61–81, 2004.
- 2780 [31] Jaizhen Cai. Counting embeddings of planar graphs using DFS trees. *SIAM J. Discrete Math.* 6(3):335–352,
2781 1993.
- 2782 [32] Allan Calder and Jerrold Siegel. On the width of homotopies. *Topology* 19(3):209–220. Elsevier, 1980.
- 2783 [33] Gabriel D. Carroll and David Speyer. The cube recurrence. *Elec. J. Combin.* 11:#R73, 2004.
- 2784 [34] Erin W. Chambers, Éric Colin de Verdière, Jeff Erickson, Sylvain Lazard, Francis Lazarus, and Shripad Thite.
2785 Homotopic Fréchet distance between curves or, walking your dog in the woods in polynomial time. *Comput.*
2786 *Geom. Theory Appl.* 43(3):295–311, 2010.
- 2787 [35] Erin W. Chambers and David Letscher. On the height of a homotopy. *Proc. 21st Canadian Conference on*
2788 *Computational Geometry*, vol. 9, 103–106, 2009.
- 2789 [36] Erin W. Chambers and David Letscher. Erratum for on the height of a homotopy, 2010. (<http://mathcs.slu.edu/~chambers/papers/hherratum.pdf>).
- 2791 [37] Erin Wolf Chambers, Gregory R Chambers, Arnaud de Mesmay, Tim Ophelders, and Regina Rotman.
2792 Constructing monotone homotopies and sweepouts. Preprint, August 2017. arXiv:1704.06175.

- 2793 [38] Erin Wolf Chambers, Arnaud de Mesmay, and Tim Ophelders. On the complexity of optimal homotopies.
2794 *Proceedings of the Twenty-Ninth Annual ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms*, 1121–1134, 2018.
- 2795 [39] Erin Wolf Chambers and Yusu Wang. Measuring similarity between curves on 2-manifolds via homotopy
2796 area. *Proceedings of the twenty-ninth annual symposium on Computational geometry*, 425–434, 2013.
- 2797 [40] Gregory R. Chambers and Yevgeny Liokumovich. Converting homotopies to isotopies and dividing homo-
2798 topies in half in an effective way. *Geometric and Functional Analysis* 24(4):1080–1100. Springer, 2014.
- 2799 [41] Gregory R Chambers and Yevgeny Liokumovich. Optimal sweepouts of a Riemannian 2-sphere. Preprint,
2800 June 2016. arXiv:1411.6349.
- 2801 [42] Gregory R Chambers and Regina Rotman. Monotone homotopies and contracting discs on Riemannian
2802 surfaces. *Journal of Topology and Analysis* 1–32. World Scientific, 2016.
- 2803 [43] Hsien-Chih Chang and Jeff Erickson. Electrical reduction, homotopy moves, and defect. Preprint, October
2804 2015. arXiv:1510.00571.
- 2805 [44] Hsien-Chih Chang and Jeff Erickson. Untangling planar curves. *Proc. 32nd Int. Symp. Comput. Geom.*,
2806 29:1–29:15, 2016. Leibniz International Proceedings in Informatics 51. (<http://drops.dagstuhl.de/opus/volltexte/2016/5921>).
- 2807
- 2808 [45] Hsien-Chih Chang and Jeff Erickson. Lower bounds for planar electrical reduction. Submitted, 2017.
- 2809 [46] Hsien-Chih Chang and Jeff Erickson. Unwinding annular curves and electrically reducing planar networks.
2810 Accepted to Computational Geometry: Young Researchers Forum, Proc. 33rd Int. Symp. Comput. Geom.,
2811 2017.
- 2812 [47] Hsien-Chih Chang, Jeff Erickson, Arnaud de Mesmay, David Letscher, Saul Schleimer, Eric Sedgwick, Dylan
2813 Thurston, and Stephan Tillmann. Untangling curves on surfaces via local moves. *Proc. 29th Annual*
2814 *ACM-SIAM Symposium on Discrete Algorithms*, 121–135, 2018.
- 2815 [48] Hsien-Chih Chang and Arnaud de Mesmay. Tightening curves on surfaces: Better and faster. Manuscript,
2816 2018.
- 2817 [49] Manoj K. Chari, Thomas A. Feo, and J. Scott Provan. The delta-wye approximation procedure for two-
2818 terminal reliability. *Oper. Res.* 44(5):745–757, 1996.
- 2819 [50] Moira Chas. Minimal intersection of curves on surfaces. *Geometriae Dedicata* 144(1):25–60. Springer, 2010.
- 2820 [51] Moira Chas. The Goldman bracket and the intersection of curves on surfaces. *Geometry, Groups and*
2821 *Dynamics: ICTS Program “Groups, Geometry and Dynamics”, December 3–16, 2012, Almora, India*, 73–83,
2822 2015. Contemporary Mathematics 639, American Mathematical Soc.
- 2823 [52] Moira Chas and Fabiana Krongold. An algebraic characterization of simple closed curves on surfaces with
2824 boudnary. *J. Topol. Anal.* 2(3):395–417, 2010.
- 2825 [53] Moira Chas and Fabiana Krongold. Algebraic characteriation of simple closed curves via Turaev’s cobracket.
2826 *J. Topology* 9(1):91–104, 2015.
- 2827 [54] Bernard Chazelle. A theorem on polygon cutting with applications. *Proc. 23rd Ann. IEEE Symp. Found.*
2828 *Comput. Sci.*, 339–349, 1982.
- 2829 [55] Bernard Chazelle and Herbert Edelsbrunner. An optimal algorithm for intersecting line segments in the
2830 plane. *J. ACM* 39(1):1–54, 1992.
- 2831 [56] Sergei Chmutov and Sergei Duzhin. Explicit formulas for Arnold’s generic curve invariants. *Arnold-Gelfand*
2832 *Mathematical Seminars: Geometry and Singularity Theory*, 123–138, 1997. Birkhäuser.
- 2833 [57] Sergei Chmutov, Sergei Duzhin, and Jacob Mostovoy. *Introduction to Vassiliev knot invariants*. Cambridge
2834 Univ. Press, 2012. (<http://www.pdmi.ras.ru/~duzhin/papers/cdbook>). arXiv:1103.5628.

- 2835 [58] Benny Chor, Charles E. Leiserson, and Ronald L. Rivest. An application of number theory to the organization
2836 of raster-graphics memory (extended abstract). *Proc. 23rd Ann. IEEE Symp. Found. Comput. Sci.*, 92–99,
2837 1982.
- 2838 [59] Benny Chor, Charles E. Leiserson, Ronald L. Rivest, and James B. Shearer. An application of number theory
2839 to the organization of raster-graphics memory. *J. ACM* 33(1):86–104, 1986.
- 2840 [60] Kenneth L. Clarkson and Peter W. Shor. Applications of random sampling in computational geometry, II.
2841 *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 4:387–421, 1989.
- 2842 [61] Marshall Cohen and Martin Lustig. Paths of geodesics and geometric intersection numbers: I. *Combinatorial*
2843 *Group Theory and Topology*, 479–500, 1984. Annals of Math. Studies 111, Princeton Univ. Press.
- 2844 [62] Charles J. Colbourn, J. Scott Provan, and Dirk Vertigan. A new approach to solving three combinatorial
2845 enumeration problems on planar graphs. *Discrete Appl. Math.* 60:119–129, 1995.
- 2846 [63] Éric Colin de Verdière and Jeff Erickson. Tightening non-simple paths and cycles on surfaces. *Proc. 17th*
2847 *Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 192–201, 2006.
- 2848 [64] Éric Colin de Verdière and Jeff Erickson. Tightening non-simple paths and cycles on surfaces. *SIAM J.*
2849 *Comput.* 39(8):3784–3813, 2010.
- 2850 [65] Éric Colin de Verdière and Francis Lazarus. Optimal pants decompositions and shortest homotopic cycles
2851 on an orientable surface. *J. ACM* 54(4), 2007.
- 2852 [66] Yves Colin de Verdière. Réseaux électriques planaires. *Prepublications de l’Institut Fourier* 225:1–20, 1992.
- 2853 [67] Yves Colin de Verdière. Réseaux électriques planaires I. *Comment. Math. Helvetici* 69:351–374, 1994.
- 2854 [68] Yves Colin de Verdière, Isidoro Gitler, and Dirk Vertigan. Réseaux électriques planaires II. *Comment. Math.*
2855 *Helvetici* 71:144–167, 1996.
- 2856 [69] John H. Conway. An enumeration of knots and links, and some of their algebraic properties. *Computational*
2857 *Problems in Abstract Algebra*, 329–358, 1970. Pergamon Press.
- 2858 [70] Alexander Coward and Marc Lackenby. An upper bound on Reidemeister moves. *Amer. J. Math.* 136(4):1023–
2859 1066, 2014. arXiv:1104.1882.
- 2860 [71] Edward B. Curtis, David Ingerman, and James A. Morrow. Circular planar graphs and resistor networks.
2861 *Linear Alg. Appl.* 283(1–3):115–150, 1998.
- 2862 [72] Edward B. Curtis, Edith Mooers, and James Morrow. Finding the conductors in circular networks from
2863 boundary measurements. *Math. Mod. Num. Anal.* 28(7):781–813, 1994.
- 2864 [73] Edward B. Curtis and James A. Morrow. *Inverse Problems for Electrical Networks*. World Scientific, 2000.
- 2865 [74] Richard Dedekind. Erläuterungen zu den Fragmenten XXVIII. *Berhard Riemann’s Gesammelte Mathematische*
2866 *Werke und wissenschaftlicher Nachlass*, 2nd edition, 466–478, 1892. Teubner.
- 2867 [75] Max Dehn. Über unendliche diskontinuierliche Gruppen. *Math. Ann.* 71(1):116–144, 1911.
- 2868 [76] Lino Demasi and Bojan Mohar. Four terminal planar Delta-Wye reducibility via rooted $K_{2,4}$ minors. *Proc.*
2869 *26th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 1728–1742, 2015.
- 2870 [77] Vincent Despré and Francis Lazarus. Computing the geometric intersection number of curves. *Proc. 33rd*
2871 *Int. Symp. Comput. Geom.*, 35:1–35:15, 2017. Leibniz Int. Proc. Informatics 77. arXiv:1511.09327.
- 2872 [78] Giuseppe Di Battista and Roberto Tamassia. Incremental planarity testing. *Proc. 30th Ann. IEEE Symp.*
2873 *Foundations Comput. Sci.*, 436–441, 1989.

- 2874 [79] Giuseppe Di Battista and Roberto Tamassia. On-line planarity testing. *SIAM J. Comput.* 25(5):956–997,
2875 1996.
- 2876 [80] Reinhard Diestel. *Graph Theory*, 5th edition. Springer Publishing Company, Incorporated, 2017.
- 2877 [81] Walther Dyck. Beiträge zur Analysis situs I. Aufsatz. Ein- und zweidimensionale Mannigfaltigkeiten. *Math.*
2878 *Ann.* 32(4):457–512, 1888.
- 2879 [82] Alon Efrat, Stephen G. Kobourov, and Anna Lubiw. Computing homotopic shortest paths efficiently. *Comput.*
2880 *Geom. Theory Appl.* 35(3):162–172, 2006.
- 2881 [83] Arno Eigenwillig and Michael Kerber. Exact and efficient 2D-arrangements of arbitrary algebraic curves.
2882 *Proc. 19th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 122–131, 2008.
- 2883 [84] Ehab S. El-Mallah and Charles J. Colbourn. On two dual classes of planar graphs. *Discrete mathematics*
2884 80(1):21–40. Elsevier, 1990.
- 2885 [85] G. V. Epifanov. Reduction of a plane graph to an edge by a star-triangle transformation. *Dokl. Akad. Nauk*
2886 *SSSR* 166:19–22, 1966. In Russian. English translation in *Soviet Math. Dokl.* 7:13–17, 1966.
- 2887 [86] David Eppstein. Dynamic generators of topologically embedded graphs. *Proc. 14th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp.*
2888 *Discrete Algorithms*, 599–608, 2003. arXiv:cs.DS/0207082.
- 2889 [87] David B. A. Epstein. Curves on 2-manifolds and isotopies. *Acta Mathematica* 115:83–107, 1966.
- 2890 [88] Jeff Erickson. Simple polygons. Preliminary draft, 2013. ([http://jeffe.cs.illinois.edu/teaching/comptop/
2891 schedule.html](http://jeffe.cs.illinois.edu/teaching/comptop/schedule.html)).
- 2892 [89] Jeff Erickson. Efficiently hex-meshing things with topology. *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 52(3):427–449. Springer,
2893 2014.
- 2894 [90] Jeff Erickson. Personal communication, May 2018.
- 2895 [91] Jeff Erickson and Sariel Har-Peled. Optimally cutting a surface into a disk. *Discrete Comput. Geom.*
2896 31(1):37–59, 2004.
- 2897 [92] Jeff Erickson and Amir Nayyeri. Minimum cuts and shortest non-separating cycles via homology covers.
2898 *Proc. 22nd Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp. Discrete Algorithms*, 1166–1176, 2011.
- 2899 [93] Jeff Erickson and Kim Whittlesey. Transforming curves on surfaces redux. *Proc. 24th Ann. ACM-SIAM Symp.*
2900 *Discrete Algorithms*, 1646–1655, 2013.
- 2901 [94] Chaim Even-Zohar. Models of random knots. *Journal of Applied and Computational Topology* 1(2):263–296.
2902 Springer, 2017.
- 2903 [95] Chaim Even-Zohar, Joel Hass, Nati Linial, and Tahl Nowik. Invariants of random knots and links. *Discrete &*
2904 *Computational Geometry* 56(2):274–314, 2016. arXiv:1411.3308.
- 2905 [96] Chaim Even-Zohar, Joel Hass, Nati Linial, and Tahl Nowik. The distribution of knots in the petaluma model.
2906 Preprint, April 2017. arXiv:1706.06571.
- 2907 [97] Chaim Even-Zohar, Joel Hass, Nati Linial, and Tahl Nowik. Universal knot diagrams. Preprint, April 2018.
2908 arXiv:1804.09860.
- 2909 [98] Brittany Terese Fasy, Selcuk Karakoc, and Carola Wenk. On minimum area homotopies of normal curves in
2910 the plane. Preprint, July 2017. arXiv:1707.02251.
- 2911 [99] Thomas A. Feo. *I. A Lagrangian Relaxation Method for Testing The Infeasibility of Certain VLSI Routing*
2912 *Problems. II. Efficient Reduction of Planar Networks For Solving Certain Combinatorial Problems*. Ph.D. thesis,
2913 Univ. California Berkeley, 1985. (<http://search.proquest.com/docview/303364161>).

- 2914 [100] Thomas A. Feo and J. Scott Provan. Delta-wye transformations and the efficient reduction of two-terminal
2915 planar graphs. *Oper. Res.* 41(3):572–582, 1993.
- 2916 [101] Amos Fiat and Adi Shamir. Polymorphic arrays: A novel VLSI layout for systolic computers. *J. Comput.*
2917 *System Sci.* 33(1):47–65, 1986.
- 2918 [102] Amos Fiat and Adi Shamir. How to find a battleship. *Networks* 19(3):361–371, 1989.
- 2919 [103] George K. Francis. The folded ribbon theorem: A contribution to the study of immersed circles. *Trans. Amer.*
2920 *Math. Soc.* 141:271–303, 1969.
- 2921 [104] George K. Francis. Titus’ homotopies of normal curves. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* 30:511–518, 1971.
- 2922 [105] George K. Francis. Generic homotopies of immersions. *Indiana Univ Math. J.* 21(12):1101–1112, 1971/72.
- 2923 [106] George K. Francis and Jeff Weeks. Conway’s ZIP proof. *Amer. Math. Monthly* 106(5):393–399, 1999.
- 2924 [107] J. P. Gadani. System effectiveness evaluation using star and delta transformations. *IEEE Trans. Reliability*
2925 R-30(1):43–47, 1981.
- 2926 [108] Jean Gallier and Dianna Xu. *A guide to the classification theorem for compact surfaces*. Springer Science &
2927 Business Media, 2013.
- 2928 [109] Carl Friedrich Gauß. Nachlass. I. Zur Geometria situs. *Werke*, vol. 8, 271–281, 1900. Teubner. Originally
2929 written between 1823 and 1840.
- 2930 [110] Meinolf Geck and Gotz Pfeiffer. On the irreducible characters of hecke algebras. *Advances in Mathematics*
2931 102(1):79–94, 1993.
- 2932 [111] Steve M. Gersten and Hamish B. Short. Small cancellation theory and automatic groups. *Invent. Math.*
2933 102:305–334, 1990.
- 2934 [112] Peter Gibilin. *Graphs, Surfaces and Homology*, 3rd edition. Cambridge Univ. Press, 2010.
- 2935 [113] Cole A. Giller. A family of links and the Conway calculus. *Transactions of the American Mathematical Society*
2936 270(1):75–109, 1982.
- 2937 [114] Patrick M. Gilmer and Richard A. Litherland. The duality conjecture in formal knot theory. *Osaka Journal*
2938 *of Mathematics* 23(1):229–247. Osaka University and Osaka City University, Departments of Mathematics,
2939 1986.
- 2940 [115] Isidoro Gitler. *Delta-wye-delta Transformations: Algorithms and Applications*. Ph.D. dissertation, University
2941 of Waterloo, 1991.
- 2942 [116] Isidoro Gitler and Feliú Sagols. On terminal delta-wye reducibility of planar graphs. *Networks* 57(2):174–186,
2943 2011.
- 2944 [117] Jay R. Goldman and Louis H. Kauffman. Knots, tangles, and electrical networks. *Adv. Appl. Math.* 14:267–
2945 306, 1993.
- 2946 [118] William M. Goldman. Invariant functions on Lie groups and hamiltonian flows of surface group representa-
2947 tions. *Inventiones mathematicae* 85(2):263–302. Springer, 1986.
- 2948 [119] Daciberg L. Gonçalves, Elena Kudryavtseva, and Heiner Zieschang. An algorithm for minimal number of
2949 intersection points of curves on surfaces. *Proc. Seminar on Vector and Tensor Analysis* 26(139–167), 2005.
- 2950 [120] Jacob E. Goodman and Stefan Felsner. Pseudoline arrangements. *Handbook of discrete and computational*
2951 *geometry*, 3rd edition, chapter 5, 125–157, 2017. Chapman and Hall/CRC.
- 2952 [121] Gramoz Goranci, Monika Henzinger, and Pan Peng. Improved guarantees for vertex sparsification in planar
2953 graphs. Preprint, December 2017. arXiv:1702.01136.

- 2954 [122] Maurits de Graaf. *Graphs and curves on surfaces*. Ph.D. dissertation, Universiteit van Amsterdam, 1994.
- 2955 [123] Maurits de Graaf and Alexander Schrijver. Characterizing homotopy of systems of curves on a compact
2956 surface by crossing numbers. *Linear Alg. Appl.* 226–228:519–528, 1995.
- 2957 [124] Maurits de Graaf and Alexander Schrijver. Decomposition of graphs on surfaces. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B*
2958 70:157–165, 1997.
- 2959 [125] Maurits de Graaf and Alexander Schrijver. Making curves minimally crossing by Reidemeister moves. *J.*
2960 *Comb. Theory Ser. B* 70(1):134–156, 1997.
- 2961 [126] Matthew A. Grayson. Shortening embedded curves. *Ann. Math.* 129(1):71–111, 1989.
- 2962 [127] Keith Gremban. *Combinatorial Preconditioners for Sparse, Symmetric, Diagonally Dominant Linear Sys-*
2963 *tems*. Ph.D. thesis, Carnegie Mellon University, 1996. ([https://www.cs.cmu.edu/~glmiller/Publications/
2964 b2hd-GrembanPHD.html](https://www.cs.cmu.edu/~glmiller/Publications/b2hd-GrembanPHD.html)). Tech. Rep. CMU-CS-96-123.
- 2965 [128] Branko Grünbaum. *Convex Polytopes*. Monographs in Pure and Applied Mathematics XVI. John Wiley &
2966 Sons, 1967.
- 2967 [129] Doris Lloyd Grosh. Comments on the delta-star problem. *IEEE Trans. Reliability* R-32(4):391–394, 1983.
- 2968 [130] Leonidas J. Guibas and Jorge Stolfi. Primitives for the manipulation of general subdivisions and the
2969 computation of Voronoi diagrams. *ACM Trans. Graphics* 4(2):75–123, 1985.
- 2970 [131] Hariom Gupta and Jaydev Sharma. A delta-star transformation approach for reliability estimation. *IEEE*
2971 *Trans. Reliability* R-27(3):212–214, 1978.
- 2972 [132] Tobias J. Hagge and Jonathan T. Yazinski. On the necessity of Reidemeister move 2 for simplifying immersed
2973 planar curves. *Knots in Poland III. Part III*, 101–110, 2014. Banach Center Publ. 103, Inst. Math., Polish
2974 Acad. Sci. arXiv:0812.1241.
- 2975 [133] Sarel Har-Peled, Amir Nayyeri, Mohammad Salavatipour, and Anastasios Sidiropoulos. How to walk your
2976 dog in the mountains with no magic leash. *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 55(1):39–73, 2016.
- 2977 [134] Joel Hass and Tal Nowik. Unknot diagrams requiring a quadratic number of Reidemeister moves to untangle.
2978 *Discrete Comput. Geom.* 44(1):91–95, 2010.
- 2979 [135] Joel Hass and Peter Scott. Intersections of curves on surfaces. *Israel J. Math.* 51(1–2):90–120, 1985.
- 2980 [136] Joel Hass and Peter Scott. Shortening curves on surfaces. *Topology* 33(1):25–43, 1994.
- 2981 [137] Chuichiro Hayashi and Miwa Hayashi. Minimal sequences of Reidemeister moves on diagrams of torus
2982 knots. *Proc. Amer. Math. Soc.* 139:2605–2614, 2011. arXiv:1003.1349.
- 2983 [138] Chuichiro Hayashi, Miwa Hayashi, and Tahl Nowik. Unknotting number and number of Reidemeister moves
2984 needed for unlinking. *Topology Appl.* 159:1467–1474, 2012. arXiv:1012.4131.
- 2985 [139] Chuichiro Hayashi, Miwa Hayashi, Minori Sawada, and Sayaka Yamada. Minimal unknotting sequences of
2986 Reidemeister moves containing unmatched RII moves. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 21(10):1250099 (13 pages),
2987 2012. arXiv:1011.3963.
- 2988 [140] John Hershberger and Jack Snoeyink. Computing minimum length paths of a given homotopy class. *Comput.*
2989 *Geom. Theory Appl.* 4:63–98, 1994.
- 2990 [141] Arthur M. Hobbs. Letter to the editor: Remarks on network simplification. *Oper. Res.* 15(3):548–551, 1967.
- 2991 [142] Heinz Hopf. Über die Drehung der Tangenten und Sehnen ebener Kurven. *Compositio Math.* 2:50–62, 1935.
- 2992 [143] Jim Hoste. The Arf invariant of a totally proper link. *Topology and its Applications* 18(2-3):163–177. Elsevier,
2993 1984.

- 2994 [144] Noburo Ito and Yusuke Takimura. (1,2) and weak (1,3) homotopies on knot projections. *J. Knot Theory*
 2995 *Ramif.* 22(14):1350085 (14 pages), 2013. Addendum in *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 23(8):1491001 (2 pages),
 2996 2014.
- 2997 [145] Noburo Ito, Yusuke Takimura, and Kouki Taniyama. Strong and weak (1, 3) homotopies on knot projections.
 2998 *Osaka J. Math* 52(3):617–647, 2015.
- 2999 [146] François Jaeger. On spin models, triply regular association schemes, and duality. *J. Alg. Comb.* 4:103–144,
 3000 1995.
- 3001 [147] Vaughan F. R. Jones. On knot invariants related to some statistical mechanical models. *Pacific journal of*
 3002 *mathematics* 137(2):311–334. University of California, Department of Mathematics, 1989.
- 3003 [148] Camille Jordan. Sur la déformation des surfaces. *J. Math. Pures Appl. (Série 2)* 11:105–109, 1866.
- 3004 [149] Camille Jordan. Courbes continues. *Cours d'Analyse de l'École Polytechnique*, 1st edition, vol. 3, 587–594,
 3005 1887.
- 3006 [150] Camille Jordan. Lignes continues. *Cours d'Analyse de l'École Polytechnique*, 2nd edition, vol. 1, 90–99, 1893.
- 3007 [151] Louis H. Kauffman. *On Knots*. Princeton Univ. Press, 1987.
- 3008 [152] Louis H. Kauffman. State models and the Jones polynomial. *Topology* 26(3):395–407. Elsevier, 1987.
- 3009 [153] Louis H. Kauffman. New invariants in the theory of knots. *Amer. Math. Monthly* 95(3):195–242, 1988.
- 3010 [154] Louis H. Kauffman. Gauss codes, quantum groups and ribbon Hopf algebras. *Reviews in Mathematical*
 3011 *Physics* 5(4):735–773. World Scientific, 1993.
- 3012 [155] Arthur Edwin Kennelly. Equivalence of triangles and three-pointed stars in conducting networks. *Electrical*
 3013 *World and Engineer* 34(12):413–414, 1899.
- 3014 [156] Richard W. Kenyon. The Laplacian on planar graphs and graphs on surfaces. *Current Developments in*
 3015 *Mathematics*, 2011. Int. Press. arXiv:1203.1256.
- 3016 [157] Mikhail Khovanov. Doodle groups. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 349(6):2297–2315, 1997.
- 3017 [158] Elias Koutsoupias and David Scot Taylor. Tight bounds for 2-dimensional indexing schemes. *Proc. 17th Ann.*
 3018 *ACM Symp. Principles Database Syst.* 52–58, 1998.
- 3019 [159] Marc Lackenby. A polynomial upper bound on Reidemeister moves. *Ann. Math.* 182(2):491–564, 2015.
 3020 arXiv:1302.0180.
- 3021 [160] Sergei K. Lando and Alexander K. Zvonkin. *Graphs on Surfaces and Their Applications*. Low-Dimensional
 3022 *Topology II*. Springer-Verlag, 2004.
- 3023 [161] Francis Lazarus and Julien Rivaud. On the homotopy test on surfaces. *Proc. 53rd Ann. IEEE Symp.*
 3024 *Foundations Comput. Sci.*, to appear, 2012. arXiv:1110.4573.
- 3025 [162] Der-Tsai Lee and Franco P. Preparata. Euclidean shortest paths in the presence of rectilinear barriers.
 3026 *Networks* 14:393–410, 1984.
- 3027 [163] John M. Lee. *Introduction to Topological Manifolds*. Graduate Texts in Mathematics 202. Springer, 2000.
- 3028 [164] Alfred Lehman. A necessary condition for wye-delta transformation. MRC Technical Summary Report 383,
 3029 Math. Res. Center, Univ, Wisconsin, March 1963. (www.dtic.mil/dtic/tr/fulltext/u2/403836.pdf).
- 3030 [165] Alfred Lehman. Wye-delta transformations in probabilistic network. *J. Soc. Indust. Appl. Math.* 11:773–805,
 3031 1963.
- 3032 [166] Gerard T. Lingner, Themistocles Politof, and A. Satyanarayana. A forbidden minor characterization and
 3033 reliability of a class of partial 4-trees. *Networks* 25(3):139–146. Wiley Online Library, 1995.

- 3034 [167] Xiao-Song Lin and Zhenghan Wang. Integral geometry of plane curves and knot invariants. *J. Diff. Geom.*
3035 44:74–95, 1996.
- 3036 [168] Richard J. Lipton and Robert E. Tarjan. A separator theorem for planar graphs. *SIAM J. Applied Math.*
3037 36(2):177–189, 1979.
- 3038 [169] Chenghui Luo. *Numerical Invariants and Classification of Smooth and Polygonal Plane Curves*. Ph.D. thesis,
3039 Brown Univ, 1997.
- 3040 [170] Feng Luo. Simple loops on surfaces and their intersection numbers. Preprint, January 1998.
3041 arXiv:math/9801018.
- 3042 [171] Feng Luo. Simple loops on surfaces and their intersection numbers. *Journal of Differential Geometry*
3043 85(1):73–116. Lehigh University, 2010.
- 3044 [172] Martin Lustig. Paths of geodesics and geometric intersection numbers: II. *Combinatorial Group Theory and*
3045 *Topology*, 501–544, 1987. Annals of Math. Studies 111, Princeton Univ. Press.
- 3046 [173] Roger C. Lyndon. On Dehn’s algorithm. *Math. Ann.* 166:208–228, 1966.
- 3047 [174] Roger C. Lyndon and Paul E. Schupp. *Combinatorial Group Theory*. Springer-Verlag, 1977.
- 3048 [175] Saunders Mac Lane. A structural characterization of planar combinatorial graphs. *Duke Math. J.* 3(3):460–
3049 472, 1937.
- 3050 [176] William S. Massey. *A basic course in algebraic topology*. Springer-Verlag, 1991.
- 3051 [177] August F. Möbius. Theorie der elementaren Verwandtschaft. *Ber. Sächs. Akad. Wiss. Leipzig, Math.-Phys. Kl.*
3052 17:18–57, 1863. *Gesammelte Werke* 2:433–471, Leipzig, 1886.
- 3053 [178] Curt Meyer. Über einige Anwendungen Dedekindscher Summen. *J. Reine Angew. Math.* 198:143–203, 1957.
- 3054 [179] Bojan Mohar and Carsten Thomassen. *Graphs on Surfaces*. Johns Hopkins Univ. Press, 2001.
- 3055 [180] Ketan Mulmuley. A fast planar partition algorithm, I. *J. Symbolic Comput.* 10(3–4):253–280, 1990.
- 3056 [181] Hiroyuki Nakahara and Hiromitsu Takahashi. An algorithm for the solution of a linear system by Δ -Y
3057 transformations. *IEICE TRANSACTIONS on Fundamentals of Electronics, Communications and Computer*
3058 *Sciences* E79-A(7):1079–1088, 1996. Special Section on Multi-dimensional Mobile Information Network.
- 3059 [182] Max Neumann-Coto. A characterization of shortest geodesics on surfaces. *Algebraic & Geometric Topology*
3060 1:349–368, 2001.
- 3061 [183] Zipei Nie. On the minimum area of null homotopies of curves traced twice. Preprint, December 2014.
3062 arXiv:1412.0101.
- 3063 [184] Steven D. Noble and Dominic J. A. Welsh. Knot graphs. *J. Graph Theory* 34(1):100–111, 2000.
- 3064 [185] Tahl Nowik. Complexity of planar and spherical curves. *Duke J. Math.* 148(1):107–118, 2009.
- 3065 [186] Tahl Nowik. Order one invariants of planar curves. *Adv. Math.* 220:427–440, 2009. arXiv:0712.4071.
- 3066 [187] Jane M. Paterson. A combinatorial algorithm for immersed loops in surfaces. *Topology Appl.* 123(2):205–234,
3067 2002.
- 3068 [188] George Pólya. An elementary analogue to the Gauss-Bonnet theorem. *Amer. Math. Monthly* 61(9):601–603,
3069 1954.
- 3070 [189] Sofya Poger. *Some New Results on Three-Terminal Planar Graph Reducibility*. Ph.D. dissertation, Stevens Inst.
3071 Tech., 2001.

- 3072 [190] Sofya Poger and Yoram J. Sussman. A Δ -wye- Δ reduction for planar grid graphs in subquadratic time.
3073 *Algorithms and Complexity in Durham 2006: Proceedings of the Second ACiD Workshop*, 119–130, 2006.
- 3074 [191] Themistocles Politof. *A Characterization and Efficient Reliability Computation of Delta-Y Reducible Networks*.
3075 Ph.D. dissertation, University of California, Berkeley, 1983.
- 3076 [192] Themistocles Politof and A. Satyanarayana. Network reliability and inner-four-cycle-free graphs. *Mathematics*
3077 *of operations research* 11(3):484–505. INFORMS, 1986.
- 3078 [193] Themistocles Politof and A. Satyanarayana. A linear-time algorithm to compute the reliability of planar
3079 cube-free networks. *IEEE Transactions on Reliability* 39(5):557–563. IEEE, 1990.
- 3080 [194] Themistocles Politof, A. Satyanarayana, and L. Tung. An $O(n \cdot \log(n))$ algorithm to compute the all-terminal
3081 reliability of $(K_5, K_{2,2,2})$ free networks. *IEEE transactions on reliability* 41(4):512–517. IEEE, 1992.
- 3082 [195] Michael Polyak. Invariants of curves and fronts via Gauss diagrams. *Topology* 37(5):989–1009, 1998.
- 3083 [196] Michael Polyak. New Whitney-type formulae for plane curves. *Differential and symplectic topology of knots*
3084 *and curves*, 103–111, 1999. Amer. Math. Soc. Translations 190, Amer. Math. Soc.
- 3085 [197] Michael Polyak and Oleg Viro. Gauss diagram formulas for Vassiliev invariants. *Int. Math. Res. Notices*
3086 11:445–453, 1994.
- 3087 [198] Michael Polyak and Oleg Viro. On the Casson knot invariant. *J. Knot Theory Ramif.* 10(5):711–738, 2001.
3088 [arXiv:math/9903158](https://arxiv.org/abs/math/9903158).
- 3089 [199] Alexander Postnikov. Total positivity, grassmannians, and networks. Preprint, Sep 2006.
3090 [arXiv:math/0609764](https://arxiv.org/abs/math/0609764).
- 3091 [200] Igor Prlina, Marcus Spradlin, and Stefan Stanojevic. All-loop singularities of scattering amplitudes in
3092 massless planar theories. Preprint, May 2018. [arXiv:1805.11617](https://arxiv.org/abs/1805.11617).
- 3093 [201] Hans Rademacher and Emil Grosswald. *Dedekind Sums*. Carus Math. Monographs 16. Math. Assoc. America,
3094 1972.
- 3095 [202] Kurt Reidemeister. Elementare Begründung der Knotentheorie. *Abh. Math. Sem. Hamburg* 5:24–32, 1927.
- 3096 [203] Gerhard Ringel. Teilungen der Ebene durch Geraden oder topologische Geraden. *Math. Z.* 64(1):79–102,
3097 1956.
- 3098 [204] Gerhard Ringel. Über geraden in allgemeiner lage. *Elemente der Mathematik* 12:75–82, 1957.
- 3099 [205] Neil Robertson and Paul D. Seymour. Graph minors. VII. Disjoint paths on a surface. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B*
3100 45(2):212–254, 1988.
- 3101 [206] Neil Robertson and Paul D. Seymour. Graph minors. X. Obstructions to tree-decomposition. *J. Comb. Theory*
3102 *Ser. B* 52(2):153–190, 1991.
- 3103 [207] Neil Robertson, Paul D. Seymour, and Robin Thomas. Quickly excluding a planar graph. *J. Comb. Theory*
3104 *Ser. B* 62(2):232–348, 1994.
- 3105 [208] Neil Robertson and Richard Vitray. Representativity of surface embeddings. *Paths, Flows, and VLSI-Layout*,
3106 293–328, 1990. Algorithms and Combinatorics 9, Springer-Verlag.
- 3107 [209] Arnie Rosenthal. Note on ‘Closed form solutions for delta-star and star-delta conversion of reliability
3108 networks’. *IEEE Trans. Reliability* R-27(2):110–111, 1978.
- 3109 [210] Arnie Rosenthal and David E. Frisque. Transformations for simplifying network reliability calculations.
3110 *Networks* 7(2):97–111, 1977. Erratum in *Networks* 7(4):382, 1977.

- 3111 [211] Jean-Pierre Roudneff. Tverberg-type theorems for pseudoconfigurations of points in the plane. *European*
3112 *Journal of Combinatorics* 9(2):189–198. Elsevier, 1988.
- 3113 [212] Alexander Russell. The method of duality. *A Treatise on the Theory of Alternating Currents*, chapter XVII,
3114 380–399, 1904. Cambridge Univ. Press.
- 3115 [213] A. Satyanarayana and R. Tindell. Efficient algorithms for the evaluation of planar network reliability. Tech.
3116 rep., Department of Electrical Engineering and Computer Science, Stevens Institute of Technology, March
3117 1993.
- 3118 [214] A. Satyanarayana and L. Tung. A characterization of partial 3-trees. *Networks* 20(3):299–322. Wiley Online
3119 Library, 1990.
- 3120 [215] Arthur Schönflies. Über einen Satz aus der Analysis situs. *Nachr. Ges. Wiss. Göttingen* 79–89, 1896.
- 3121 [216] Alexander Schrijver. Homotopy and crossing of systems of curves on a surface. *Linear Alg. Appl.* 114–
3122 115:157–167, 1989.
- 3123 [217] Alexander Schrijver. Decomposition of graphs on surfaces and a homotopic circulation theorem. *J. Comb.*
3124 *Theory Ser. B* 51(2):161–210, 1991.
- 3125 [218] Alexander Schrijver. Circuits in graphs embedded on the torus. *Discrete Math.* 106/107:415–433, 1992.
- 3126 [219] Alexander Schrijver. On the uniqueness of kernels. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B* 55:146–160, 1992.
- 3127 [220] Herbert Seifert and William Threlfall. *Lehrbook der Topologie*. Teubner, Leipzig, 1934. Reprinted by AMS
3128 Chelsea, 2003. English translation in [221].
- 3129 [221] Herbert Seifert and William Threlfall. *A Textbook of Topology*. Pure and Applied Mathematics 89. Academic
3130 Press, New York, 1980. Edited by Joan S. Birman and Julian Eisner. Translated from [220] by Michael A.
3131 Goldman.
- 3132 [222] Aleksandr Shumakovich. Explicit formulas for the strangeness of plane curves. *Algebra i Analiz* 7(3):165–199,
3133 1995. Corrections in *Algebra i Analiz* 7(5):252–254, 1995. In Russian; English translation in [223].
- 3134 [223] Aleksandr Shumakovich. Explicit formulas for the strangeness of a plane curve. *St. Petersburg Math. J.*
3135 7(3):445–472, 1996. English translation of [222].
- 3136 [224] C. Singh and S. Asgarpoor. Comments on “Closed form solutions for delta-star and star-delta conversion of
3137 reliability networks”. *IEEE Trans. Reliability* R-25(5):336–339, 1976.
- 3138 [225] C. Singh and S. Asgarpoor. Reliability evaluation of flow networks using delta-star transformations. *IEEE*
3139 *Trans. Reliability* R-35(4):472–477, 1986.
- 3140 [226] Xiaohuan Song. Implementation issues for Feo and Provan’s delta-wye-delta reduction algorithm. M.Sc.
3141 Thesis, University of Victoria, 2001.
- 3142 [227] Ernesto Staffelli and Federico Thomas. Analytic formulation of the kinestatis of robot manipulators with
3143 arbitrary topology. *Proc. 2002 IEEE Conf. Robotics and Automation*, 2848–2855, 2002.
- 3144 [228] Matthias F. M. Stallmann. Using PQ-trees for planar embedding problems. Tech. Rep. NCSU-CSC TR-85-24,
3145 Dept. Comput. Sci., NC State Univ., December 1985. ([https://people.engr.ncsu.edu/mfms/Publications/
3146 1985-TR_NCSU_CSC-PQ_Trees.pdf](https://people.engr.ncsu.edu/mfms/Publications/1985-TR_NCSU_CSC-PQ_Trees.pdf)).
- 3147 [229] Matthias F. M. Stallmann. On counting planar embeddings. *Discrete Math.* 122:385–392, 1993.
- 3148 [230] Ernst Steinitz. Polyeder und Raumeinteilungen. *Enzyklopädie der mathematischen Wissenschaften mit*
3149 *Einschluss ihrer Anwendungen* III.AB(12):1–139, 1916.
- 3150 [231] Ernst Steinitz and Hans Rademacher. *Vorlesungen über die Theorie der Polyeder: unter Einschluß der Elemente*
3151 *der Topologie*. Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften 41. Springer-Verlag, 1934. Reprinted 1976.

- 3152 [232] John Stillwell. *Classical Topology and Combinatorial Group Theory*, 2nd edition. Graduate Texts in Mathe-
3153 matics 72. Springer-Verlag, 1993.
- 3154 [233] James A. Storer. On minimal node-cost planar embeddings. *Networks* 14(2):181–212, 1984.
- 3155 [234] Peter Guthrie Tait. On knots I. *Proc. Royal Soc. Edinburgh* 28(1):145–190, 1876–7.
- 3156 [235] Carsten Thomassen. Embeddings of graphs with no short noncontractible cycles. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B*
3157 48(2):155–177, 1990.
- 3158 [236] Dylan P Thurston. Geometric intersection of curves on surfaces. Preprint, August 2008. (<http://www.math.columbia.edu/~dpt/DehnCoordinates.ps>).
- 3159 [237] Alexander Tiskin. Semi-local string comparison: Algorithmic techniques and applications. Preprint,
3160 November 2013. arXiv:0707.3619.
- 3162 [238] Charles J. Titus. A theory of normal curves and some applications. *Pacific J. Math.* 10:1083–1096, 1960.
- 3163 [239] Charles J. Titus. The combinatorial topology of analytic functions on the boundary of a disk. *Acta*
3164 *Mathematica* 106:45–64, 1961.
- 3165 [240] Lorenzo Traldi. On the star-delta transformation in network reliability. *Networks* 23(3):151–157, 1993.
- 3166 [241] Tiffani Traver. Trigonometry in the hyperbolic plane. Manuscript, May 2014.
- 3167 [242] Klaus Truemper. On the delta-wye reduction for planar graphs. *J. Graph Theory* 13(2):141–148, 1989.
- 3168 [243] Klaus Truemper. A decomposition theory for matroids. VI. Almost regular matroids. *J. Comb. Theory Ser. B*
3169 55:253–301, 1992.
- 3170 [244] Klaus Truemper. *Matroid Decomposition*. Academic Press, 1992.
- 3171 [245] Klaus Truemper. A note on delta-wye-delta reductions of plane graphs. *Congr. Numer.* 158:213–220, 2002.
- 3172 [246] Vladimir G. Turaev. Quantum invariants of 3-manifolds and a glimpse of shadow topology. *C. R. Acad. Sci.*
3173 *Paris I* 313:395–398, 1991.
- 3174 [247] Vladimir G. Turaev. Skein quantization of poisson algebras of loops on surfaces. *Annales scientifiques de*
3175 *l'Ecole normale supérieure*, vol. 24, 635–704, 1991.
- 3176 [248] Vladimir G. Turaev. Shadow links and face models of statistical mechanics. *J. Diff. Geom.* 36:35–74, 1992.
- 3177 [249] Leslie S. Valiant. Universality considerations in VLSI circuits. *IEEE Trans. Comput.* C-30(2):135–140, 1981.
- 3178 [250] Oswald Veblen. Theory on plane curves in non-metrical analysis situs. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* 6:83–98,
3179 1905.
- 3180 [251] Gert Vegter. Kink-free deformation of polygons. *Proceedings of the 5th Annual Symposium on Computational*
3181 *Geometry*, 61–68, 1989.
- 3182 [252] Oleg Viro. Generic immersions of circle to surfaces and complex topology of real algebraic curves. *Topology*
3183 *of Real Algebraic Varieties and Related Topics*, 231–252, 1995. Amer. Math. Soc. Translations 173, Amer.
3184 Math. Soc.
- 3185 [253] Donald Wagner. Delta-wye reduction of almost-planar graphs. *Discrete Appl. Math.* 180:158–167, 2015.
- 3186 [254] Douglas Brent West. *Introduction to graph theory*, 2nd edition. Prentice hall Upper Saddle River, 2001.
- 3187 [255] Brian White. Mappings that minimize area in their homotopy classes. *Journal of Differential Geometry*
3188 20(2):433–446. Lehigh University, 1984.
- 3189 [256] Hassler Whitney. Congruent graphs and the connectivity of graphs. *Amer. J. Math.* 54(1):150–168, 1932.

- 3190 [257] Hassler Whitney. On regular closed curves in the plane. *Compositio Math.* 4:276–284, 1937.
- 3191 [258] Takeshi Yajima and Shin'ichi Kinoshita. On the graphs of knots. *Osaka Mathematical Journal* 9(2):155–163.
3192 Department of Mathematics, Osaka University, 1957.
- 3193 [259] Yaming Yu. Forbidden minors for wyw-delta-wye reducibility. *J. Graph Theory* 47(4):317–321, 2004.
- 3194 [260] Yaming Yu. More forbidden minors for wye-delta-wye reducibility. *Elec. J. Combin.* 13:#R7, 2006.
- 3195 [261] Stanisław K. Zaremba. Good lattice points, discrepancy, and numerical integration. *Annali di Matematica*
3196 *Pura ed Applicata* 73(1):293–317, 1966.
- 3197 [262] Stanisław K. Zaremba. A remarkable lattice generated by Fibonacci numbers. *Fibonacci Quarterly* 8(2):185–
3198 198, 1970. (<http://www.fq.math.ca/8-2.html>).
- 3199 [263] Ron Zohar and Dan Gieger. Estimation of flows in flow networks. *Europ. J. Oper. Res.* 176:691–706, 2007.